

College Caesar

Latin Text with Facing Vocabulary and
Commentary

Geoffrey Steadman

College Caesar
Latin Text with Facing Vocabulary and Commentary

First Edition

© 2011 by Geoffrey D. Steadman

All rights reserved. Subject to the exception immediately following, this book may not be reproduced, in whole or in part, in any form (beyond that copying permitted by Sections 107 and 108 of the U.S. Copyright Law and except by reviewers for the public press), without written permission from the publisher.

The author has made an online version of this work available under a Creative Commons Attribution-Noncommercial-Share Alike 3.0 License. The terms of the license can be accessed at creativecommons.org.

Accordingly, you are free to copy, alter, and distribute this work under the following conditions:

- (1) You must attribute the work to the author (but not in any way that suggests that the author endorses your alterations to the work).
- (2) You may not use this work for commercial purposes.
- (3) If you alter, transform, or build upon this work, you may distribute the resulting work only under the same or similar license as this one.

ISBN-13: 978-0-9843065-7-2

ISBN-10: 0-9843065-7-9

Published by Geoffrey Steadman
Cover Design: David Steadman

Fonts: Times New Roman

geoffreysteadman@gmail.com

Table of Contents

| | Pages |
|--|----------|
| 35 Lessons by Title..... | V |
| Preface to the Series..... | vii-viii |
| Introduction..... | ix-x |
| Outline of the <i>Bellum Gallicum</i> | xi |
| Chronology of the Life of Julius Caesar..... | xii |
| How to Use this Commentary..... | xiii |
| Running Core Vocabulary..... | xiv-xix |
| Abbreviations..... | xxii |

Selections from Caesar's *Commentārii dē Bellō Gallicō*

| | |
|--|-------|
| Book I.1-7 (Lessons 1-5) | 2-11 |
| The Helvetian Campaign | |
| Book IV.24-35 (Lessons 6-12) | 12-25 |
| First Expedition to Britain | |
| Book VI.13-20 (Lessons 13-17) | 26-35 |
| Customs Among the Gauls | |
| Book V.24-48 (Lessons 18-35) | 36-71 |
| Gauls Attack the Romans in Winter-Quarters | |
| Nouns, Pronouns, and Adjectives..... | 72-73 |
| Verb Synopses..... | 74-84 |
| Alphabetized Core Vocabulary..... | 85-91 |

35 Lessons by Title

Book 1

- Lesson 1 The Divisions Within Gaul
- Lesson 2 Orgetorix Forms a Conspiracy to Emigrate from Helvetia
- Lesson 3 Orgetorix's Conspiracy Fails
- Lesson 4 The Helvetians Follow Orgetorix's Plan: Two Possible Routes
- Lesson 5 Caesar Decides to Stop the Helvetians

Book 4

- Lesson 6 The Britons Approach the Romans as They Land
- Lesson 7 The Romans Land and Give Chase to the Britons
- Lesson 8 The Britons Seek Peace, and the Roman Cavalry is Delayed
- Lesson 9 The Fleet is Damaged in the Storm
- Lesson 10 The Britons Attack the Romans (I)
- Lesson 11 The Britons Attack the Romans (II)
- Lesson 12 The Britons are Defeated by the Romans

Book 6

- Lesson 13 Two Classes of Nobility: Druids and Knights
- Lesson 14 The Druids: Privileges, Education, and Beliefs
- Lesson 15 The Knights and Human Sacrifice
- Lesson 16 Gods and Goddesses Among the Gauls
- Lesson 17 Marriages, Funerals, and Rumors

Book 5

- Lesson 18 Roman Winter Quarters are Scattered Among the Gauls
- Lesson 19 Tasgetius is Killed and Ambiorix Revolts
- Lesson 20 Ambiorix Advises Sabinus to Leave Camp
- Lesson 21 Sabinus' Officers Advise Against Leaving the Camp
- Lesson 22 Sabinus Argues in Favor of Leaving the Camp
- Lesson 23 Cotta Argues Against Leaving the Camp, but the Romans Depart
- Lesson 24 The Romans are Ambushed, and Sabinus is Despondent
- Lesson 25 Cotta Takes Command as the Romans are Surrounded
- Lesson 26 Cotta is Wounded, and Sabinus Seeks out Ambiorix
- Lesson 27 Ambiorix Kills Sabinus and Incites the Nervii
- Lesson 28 The Nervii and other Gauls Attack Cicero's Camp
- Lesson 29 Cicero Resists as the Nervii Advise Departure
- Lesson 30 The Nervii Continue the Siege and Set Fire to Cicero's Camp
- Lesson 31 Cicero's Men Resist Amid the Flames
- Lesson 32 The Story of Vorenus and Pullo
- Lesson 33 Caesar is Informed and Acts Decisively
- Lesson 34 Caesar Sends Orders to Crassus and Labienus
- Lesson 35 Caesar Sends Word of his Arrival to Cicero

Preface to the Series

The aim of this commentary is to make selections from Julius Caesar's *Gallic War* as accessible as possible to intermediate-level Latin readers so that they may experience the joy, insight, and lasting influence that comes from reading one of the greatest works in classical antiquity in the original Latin. To accomplish this goal, I have decided to eschew the traditional commentary format and adopt the best features of Clyde Pharr's *Aeneid*.

Beneath each of the 35 sections, hereafter called "lessons," of the Latin text are all the corresponding vocabulary words that occur four or fewer times in the commentary, arranged alphabetically in two columns. On the page facing the Latin text and vocabulary is a single page of grammar commentary, which is organized according to line numbers and likewise arranged into two columns. This format allows me to include as much information as possible and yet insure that the entries are distinct and immediately accessible to readers. To complement the vocabulary within the commentary, I have added a running core vocabulary list at the beginning of this commentary that includes all words occurring five or more times arranged according to the lesson in which readers first encounter them. An alphabetized form of this list can be found in the glossary. Together, this book has been designed in such a way that, once readers have mastered the running core list, they will be able to rely solely on the Latin text and facing notes and not need to turn a page or consult outside dictionaries.

The grammatical notes are designed to help beginning readers read the text, and so I have passed over detailed literary and historical explanations in favor of short, concise, and frequent entries that focus exclusively on grammar and morphology. Assuming that readers complete their initial study of Latin with varying levels of ability, I draw attention to almost all subjunctive and accusative-infinitive constructions, identify unusual verb forms and noun constructions, and in general explain aspects of the Latin that they should have encountered in their elementary review of Latin grammar but perhaps forgotten. As a rule, I prefer to offer too much assistance rather than too little.

For instructors, I have intentionally placed the readings in Book VI before those in Book V. This arrangement conveniently breaks the book into halves of 17 and 18 lessons so that those reading in college may complete one lesson per class and have a midterm after L. 17. For those reading in a high school block schedule (90 90-minute classes), the order allows teachers to complete one lesson per day and administer several tests by the end of the 4.5-

week (22-day) interim and to finish all 35 lessons by the 9-week (45 day) interim. Year-long Latin programs can devote two days to each lesson and finish well within a 90-day semester.

Better Vocabulary-Building Strategies

One of the virtues of this commentary is that it eliminates time-consuming dictionary work. While there are occasions where a dictionary is necessary for developing a nuanced reading of the Latin, in most instances any advantage that may come from looking up a word is outweighed by the time and effort spent in the process. Many continue to defend this practice, but I am convinced that such work has little pedagogical value for intermediate and advanced students and that the time saved can be better spent reading more Latin, memorizing vocabulary, mastering principal parts, and reading advanced-level commentaries and secondary literature.

As an alternative to dictionary work, I recommend that readers review the running core vocabulary list (5 or more times) as soon as possible. Once they have mastered these words, I encourage them to single out, drill, and memorize the words that occur 3-4 times as they encounter them in the reading and devote comparatively little attention to words that occur once or twice. Altogether, I am confident that readers who follow this regimen will learn the vocabulary more efficiently and develop fluency more quickly than with traditional methods.

Print on Demand Books

This volume is a self-published, print-on-demand (POD) book, and as such it gives its author distinct freedoms not available in traditional publications. Since this book is no more than a pdf file waiting to be printed, I am able to respond very quickly to readers' recommended changes and create an revised edition that is available online or in retail within 24 hours. If you would like to suggest changes or download a free .pdf copy of this commentary, please see one of the addresses below. All criticisms are welcome, and I would be very grateful for your help.

Finally, I would like to thank Christopher Lauber at the Fordham Preparatory School and Jim Westcot at Blue Ridge High School for reading through the text and commentary and saving readers from innumerable errors, both great and small. I am very grateful for their sound judgment and keen observations.

Geoffrey Steadman Ph.D.
geoffreysteadman@gmail.com
<http://www.geoffreysteadman.com>

Introduction to Caesar's *Commentārii dē Bellō Gallicō*

Gaius Julius Caesar was a ruthless killer and consummate writer. He did not come to Gaul to rescue the people from themselves; he came to conquer, and his commentaries on the *Bellum Gallicum* were a vehicle to magnify his reputation among the Roman people. Nowhere are these two traits of Caesar better illustrated than in the passage below from Book I.12. In an effort to stop the 368,000 Helvetians from migrating to Western Gaul, Caesar pursues with three legions and intercepts one-fourth of the Helvetians (up to 92,000) as they are about to cross the Arar river and rejoin those who have already crossed. What ensues is a slaughter:

I.12 Flūmen est Arar, quod per finēs Haeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodānum
 influit, incredibilī lenitāte, ita ut oculīs in utram partem fluat iudicārī nōn possit. Id 1
 Helvetiū rātibus ac lintribus iunctīs transībant. Ubi per explorātōrēs Caesar certiōr
 factus est trēs iam partēs cōpiārum Helvetiōs id flūmen tradūxisse, quārtam vērō
partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam esse, dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē
 castrīs profectus ad eam partem pervēnit quae nondum flūmen transierat. 5

Eōs impeditōs et inopinantēs aggressus, magnam partem eōrum concidit; reliquī
 sēsē fugae mandāvērunt atque in proximās silvās abdidērunt. Is pagus appellābātur
 Tigurīnus; nam omnis cīvitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvīsa est. Hic pāgus ūnus,
 cum domō exisset, patrum nostrōrum memoriā L. Cassium consulem interfēcerat et
 eius exercitum sub iugum mīserat. Ita sive cāsū sive cōnsiliō deōrum immortalīum 10
 quae pars civitātis Helvetiae īnsignem calamitātem populō Romanō intulerat, ea
 prīnceps poenam persolvit. Quā in rē Caesar nōn solum publicās, sed etiam prīvātās
iniuriās ultus est, quod eius socerī L. Pīsōnis avum, L. Pīsōnem lēgātum, Tigurinī
 eōdem proeliō quō Cassium interfēcerant. 15

The passage is rich in rhetorical devices which Caesar employs to dehumanize the enemy, downplay the loss of life, and yet magnify his image as a Roman general. First, Caesar does not depict the Helvetians as human beings worthy of sympathy. In lines 4-7 he refers to the enemy with the banal term “partem,” and in line 7, the only line which depicts the attack itself, he employs nondescript pronouns and adjectives such as “eōs,” “eōrum,” and “reliquī” which suggest that Caesar is attacking a faceless enemy rather than an entire community. In line 4, when he refers to the Helvetians as “cōpiārum,” his word choice is not simply vague but misleading. The word *cōpiae* can refer to “supplies” or “baggage” and rightly describe the long train of Helvetians travelling with their possessions, but throughout Caesar’s writings, the word denotes “troops;” and so, when Caesar uses this word to describe the Helvetians, he perhaps intentionally suggests that he is facing armed men rather than unarmed innocents.

Since in lines 8-9 Caesar refers to the group which he attacks as a *pagus*, one of the four political districts of Helvetia, we can conclude that Caesar in fact attacked men and women of all ages. Thus, when Caesar describes those whom he attacked as “those weighed down and unsuspecting” (*eōs impeditōs et inopināntēs*, l. 7), though the passage may lead us to believe that these are *cōpiae*, troops, hindered by their packs, they are more likely men and women of all ages weighed down not by weapons but by the young, by the sick, and by the elderly.

Besides word choice, another rhetorical strategy that Caesar employs involves the relative size and arrangement of passages in his narrative. Elsewhere, Caesar is very detailed in his descriptions of battles. Here, he devotes only two lines (7-8) to the attack itself, but six (1-6) to an introduction and another nine (8-16) to his justification. In doing so, Caesar not only minimizes the importance of an attack on 92,000 but also stresses the lengthier justification—making his defense rather than the slaughter the most memorable passage in the account.

Not surprisingly, even Caesar’s justification strains credulity. Caesar claims that “in the memory of our fathers” (*patrum nostrōrum memoriā*, 10) the same part of Helvetia that he attacked had killed the consul Cassius and enslaved his soldiers. Caesar’s portrayal makes the consul’s death seem recent and Caesar’s action a timely response, but from other sources we know that Cassius was killed in 107 BC, 50 years before Caesar’s attack. Caesar’s dating appears intentionally vague. Caesar is likewise misleading when he says that his encounter with the district which killed Cassius was “either by chance or by the plan of the immortal gods” (*sive cāsū sive cōnsiliō deōrum*, 11): he not so subtly suggests that the gods approve his action and therefore readers should look upon Caesar as both just and favored by the gods.

Caesar’s ploys do not stop there. In addition to referring to himself in the third person, which makes his account seem objective rather than biased, he asserts in lines 14-16 that he is avenging not only a public injustice but a private wrong: the grandfather of Caesar’s father-in-law was killed along with Cassius. Even if the Romans found such a claim on behalf of a distant relative credible, the fact that Caesar did not know he was attacking this particular *pagus* shows that, whatever the outcome, vengeance was not among his primary motives.

As readers, therefore, we should view Caesar’s *Bellum Gallicum* not as a boring rehash of war but, just as the passage above, a lively attempt to depict events in a way that deflects blame and increases Caesar’s reputation among the Romans. Whether Caesar is vilifying the enemy (Book 1, 6) or drawing attention away from his haste and lack of preparation (Book 4, 5), we should be sceptical of Caesar’s account and ever vigilant to distinguish fact from bias.

Outline of the *Bellum Gallicum*

Scholars debate when Caesar wrote his *Commentaries*. One appealing theory is that he—perhaps with the help of staff—wrote and published each book individually while settled in winter-quarters. Such timing would have allowed Caesar to report his campaigns to the Senate and, more importantly, respond immediately to less favorable or accusatory reports spread by his political enemies.

Book 1 (58 BC): Campaign against the Helvetians. Campaign against Ariovistus.

Caesar departs from the province of Transalpine Gaul, where he is currently governor, to stop the migration of 368,000 Helvetians from Helvetia, modern Switzerland, to western Gaul. Caesar then turns his forces against Ariovistus and the Germans in Eastern Gaul and drives them across the Rhine river, the customary boundary between the Gauls and Germans.

Book 2 (57 BC): Campaign against the Belgians.

The Belgian Gauls amass forces to resist the Romans, and Caesar marches toward them. The Remi, a Belgic tribe, agree to assist Caesar. The fighting that ensues, particularly with the Belgian Nervii, is among the fiercest in the entire Gallic War. The Romans emerge victorious.

Book 3 (56 BC): Campaign against the Veneti

As troops under Servius Galba fend off attacks by Gauls in the Alps, the Veneti, a tribe in northwest Gaul on the coast of the Atlantic, seize and imprison Roman envoys. Caesar's response is to fight the seafaring Veneti on the Atlantic ocean, capture their fortresses, and execute their leaders for seizing the Roman envoys. In the meantime, the quaestor Marcus Crassus defeats the Aquitani to the south.

Book 4 (55 BC): Caesar Bridges the Rhine. First Expedition to Britain

The Suebi along with other Germanic tribes, the Usipetes and Tencteri, venture west across the Rhine into Belgian territory to avoid the fierce Germanic Suevi. After negotiations, Caesar repulses the Germans, builds a bridge to span the Rhine within ten days, and after brief skirmishes returns to Gaul. In late August, Caesar makes his initial expedition to Britain.

Book 5 (54 BC): Second Expedition to Britain.

After landing in Britain unopposed, he proceeds inland and fights with Britons under the leadership of Cassivellaunus. After Caesar subdues Cassivellaunus at Kent, he returns to Gaul. On account of low grain supplies, the Romans settle into scattered winter-quarters, which are subsequently attacked by the Gauls. While the forces under the legates Titurius and Cotta are overwhelmed by the leader Ambiorix, those under Cicero and Labienus prevail over the Nervii and Treveri respectively.

Book 6 (53 BC): Expedition to Germany. Customs among the Gauls and Germans.

As Labienus defeats the Treveri, Caesar assists Cicero's camp and pursues Ambiorix and the Eburones. He briefly crosses the Rhine river to prevent Ambiorix from receiving assistance from the Germans, but Ambiorix continues to elude the Romans. Caesar describes the organization and customs of the Gauls, the religion and warfare among the Germans, and the animals found in the Hercynian forest in Germania.

Book 7 (52 BC): The Gauls Rally and Fall under Vercingetorix

The Gauls rally under the leader Vercingetorix. After several sieges and battles, Caesar besieges Vercingetorix and the main Gaul force at Alesia. When the Gauls eventually surrender, Vercingetorix is led to Rome, where he will eventually be led in chains and executed to celebrate Caesar's triumph.

Book 8 (51 BC): Written by Aulus Hirtius, a legate of Caesar, possibly after Julius Caesar's death, the book details how Caesar's quells small uprisings and rewards loyal Romans and Gauls with gifts.

The Life of Julius Caesar

B.C.

- 100 Caesar is born on July 12th
 - 87 Flamen Dialis, selected to priesthood
 - 83 Marries Cornelia, daughter of Cinna
 - 80-78 Serves in the army in Asia Minor
 - 76-75 Studies oratory in Rhodes
 - 68 Quaestor, elected
 - 67 Marries Pompeia
 - 65 Aedile, elected
 - 63 Pontifex Maximus, elected
 - 62 Praetor, elected
 - 61 Proprietor, serves in Spain
 - 60 Forms First Triumvirate with Pompey, Crassus
 - 59 Consul, marries Calpurnia
 - 58-49 Proconsul in Gaul
 - 56 Triumvirate renewed at Luca
 - 50 Openly breaks with Pompey
 - 49 Crosses the Rubicon, civil war begins
 - 48 Battle of Pharsalia in Greece, defeats Pompey's forces
 - 47 Subdues Egypt
 - 46 Battle of Thapsus in North Africa, defeats Cato and senators, Dictator for 10 years
 - 45 Battle of Munda in Spain, defeats sons of Pompey, Imperator for life
 - 44 Assassinated by a conspiracy on March 15th
-
- 43 Grand-nephew Gaius Octavius made heir, renamed Gaius Julius Caesar Octavianus
 - Second Triumvirate formed by Octavian, Mark Antony, and Lepidus
 - 31 Battle of Actium, Octavian defeats Mark Antony and Cleopatra, becomes sole ruler
 - 31-AD 14 Octavian receives the cognomen "Augustus," becomes the first Emperor

How to Use this Commentary

Research shows that, as we learn how to read in a second language, a combination of reading and direct vocabulary instruction is statistically superior to reading alone. One of the purposes of this book is to help readers identify the most frequent words and encourage active acquisition of vocabulary.

1. Skim through the book and familiarize yourself with every grammar box and the appendix.

2. Master the core vocabulary list as soon as possible.

A. Develop a daily regimen for memorizing vocabulary and forms before you begin reading.

Start with an intensive review of the running core list on the next page. Although a substantial number of core vocabulary words come within the first few lessons of the commentary, readers have already reviewed most of these words in first year Latin and can devote their efforts to mastering the handful of words in the initial lessons that they have never encountered.

B. Download and use the core list flashcards available online (ppt or jpg format). Research has shown that you must review new words at least seven to nine times before you are able to commit them to long-term memory. Flashcards are particularly efficient at promoting repetition. As you work, delete flashcards that you have mastered and focus your efforts on the remaining words.

Digital flashcards for less frequent vocabulary (occurring 3-4 times) will appear online in time.

3. Read actively and make lots of educated guesses

A. Persistence counts. Caesar is very consistent in his use of vocabulary and grammar, and so while the readings will maintain the same level of difficulty, you will become a much better reader with time. The more earnestly you learn vocabulary and new grammar in the early readings, the more fluently you will be able to read later passages without much preparation.

B. Read in Latin word order. Initially, readers have a tendency both (i) to scan through the entire Latin sentence quickly to order to attain a sense of the constructions and (ii) to treat the sentence as a puzzle and jump around the passage from subject to verb to object and so forth. Ideally, you should read in Latin word order. Whatever method you use, always review the sentence which you have just translated in Latin word order. Over time, as you acquire more vocabulary and your comfort with Caesar increases, make reading in Latin word order your primary method of reading. It is a lot of fun, and with persistence it is very satisfying.

4. Reread a passage or lesson immediately after you have completed it.

Repeated readings not only help you commit Latin to memory but also increase your ability to read the Latin as Latin. Caesar's consistent use of vocabulary and grammar makes it possible for readers to develop reading proficiency very quickly. Always read the words out loud (or at least whisper them to yourself). While you may be inclined to translate the text into English as you reread, develop the habit of reading Latin as Latin and acquiring meaning without using English.

5. Reread the most recent passage or lesson immediately before you begin a new one.

This additional repetition will strengthen your ability to recognize vocabulary, forms, and syntax quickly, bolster your confidence, and most importantly provide you with much-needed context as you begin the next selection in the text.

Caesar Running Core Vocabulary (5 or more times)

The following list includes all words in the Latin selections that occur five or more times arranged in a running vocabulary list. The number in the left column indicates in which lesson the word first occurs. The author tabulated the frequency lists by collating all of Caesar's words into a single list and counting them. Flashcards (.ppt and .jpg) are available online. For an alphabetized list of the core words, readers should consult the glossary.

- 1 **ā, ab:** (away) from; by, 80
- 1 **absum, -esse, āfuī:** be absent, lack, 6
- 1 **ad:** to, toward; near, at 110
- 1 **alius, -a, -ud:** other, another, else, 13
- 1 **animus, -ī m:** mind, spirit; *pl.* courage, 6
- 1 **appellō (1):** to call, call by name, 5
- 1 **atque:** and, and also, and even, 60
- 1 **aut:** or (aut...aut – either...or), 32
- 1 **Belgae, -ārum m.:** Belgians, 6
- 1 **bellum, -ī, n.:** war, 16
- 1 **capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum:** to take, capture, seize, 11
- 1 **causa, -ae f.:** reason, cause; case, 21
- 1 **contineō, -ēre, -nuī, -tentum:** to hold or keep together, 6
- 1 **cum:** with (+ abl.); when, since, although, 86
- 1 **dē:** (down) from; about, concerning, 41
- 1 **dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus:** to say, speak, tell, call, name, 18
- 1 **et:** and, also, even, 167
- 1 **etiam:** also, even, besides, 8
- 1 **ferē:** almost, nearly, closely, 7
- 1 **fīnis, -is m./f.:** end, border; territory, 17
- 1 **flūmen, -inis n.:** river, stream, 9
- 1 **fortis, -e:** strong, brave, valiant, 7
- 1 **Gallia, -ae f.:** Gaul, 17
- 1 **Gallus, -a, -um:** Gallic; *subst.* a Gaul, 15
- 1 **Germānus, -a, -um:** German, 9
- 1 **gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus:** to carry (on), wage, 8
- 1 **Helvētius, -a, -um:** Helvetian; *subst.* a Helvetian 16
- 1 **hic, haec, hoc:** this, these, 92
- 1 **in:** in, on (abl.), into, to (acc.) 173
- 1 **initium, -ī n.:** beginning, entrance, 6
- 1 **inter:** between, among (+ acc.), 15
- 1 **ipse, ipsa, ipsum:** -self; the very, 17
- 1 **is, ea, id:** this, that; he, she, it, 133
- 1 **longē:** far, at a distant, 6
- 1 **noster, nostra, nostrum:** our, 36
- 1 **obtimeō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum:** hold, maintain, 6
- 1 **omnis, omne:** every, all, 72
- 1 **pars, partis, f.:** part, share, side 43
- 1 **pertineō, -ēre, -tinuī:** to stretch out, reach, extend to, 7
- 1 **proelium, -iī n.:** battle, combat, 15
- 1 **prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus:** keep off, prohibit, 6
- 1 **prōvincia, -ae f.:** province, 7

- 1 **proximus, -a, -um**: nearest, very close, 12
 1 **-que**: and, 108
 1 **quī, quae, quod (quis? quid?)**: who, which, that, 225
 1 **reliquus, -a, um**: remaining, the rest of, 28
 1 **Rhēnus, -ī m.**: Rhine River, 9
 1 **Rhodanus, -a, -um**: Rhone, 5
 1 **sē**: himself, herself, itself, themselves, 74
 1 **Sēquanus, -a, -um**: Sequanian, 5
 1 **sum, esse, fuī, futūrum**: to be, 165
 1 **suus, -a, -um**: his, her, its, their own, 54
 1 **tertius, -a, -um**: third, 8
 1 **trēs, tria**: three, 7
 1 **ūnus, -a, -um**: one, 29
 1 **virtūs, -ūtis f.**: valor, manhood, excellence, 11
 2 **ager, agrī m.**: field, land; farm, 8
 2 **alter, -era, -erum**: other (of two), 12
 2 **altus, -a, -um**: high, lofty, tall, 5
 2 **amīcītia, -ae, f.**: friendship, 12
 2 **annus, -ī m.**: year, 11
 2 **apud**: among, at the house of (acc.), 7
 2 **arbitror, arbitrārī, arbitrātus sum**: to judge, think, 10
 2 **autem**: however, moreover, 5
 2 **cīvitās cīvitātis, f.**: state, citizenship, 20
 2 **confirmō (1)**: make strong, confirm strengthen, 5
 2 **constituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus**: decide, establish, resolve, 14
 2 **copia, -ae f.**: abundance, supply; troops, 12
 2 **dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus**: lead, draw; consider, 7
 2 **ē, ex**: out from, from, out of (+ abl.), 72
 2 **facilis, -e**: easy; adv. facile, easily, 10
 2 **faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum**: do, make, perform; grant, 40
 2 **finitimus, -a, -um**: neighboring; subst. neighbors, 6
 2 **frūmentum, -ī n.**: grain, 10
 2 **habeō, -ēre, habuī, -itus**: have, hold; consider, 32
 2 **homō, -inis m./f.**: man, mortal, human, 15
 2 **imperium, -ī n.**: command, power, 7
 2 **inferō, -ferre, -tulī, illātum**: wage, carry on, 7
 2 **iter, itineris n.**: way, road, route, journey, 17
 2 **locus, -ī m.**: place, region, location, 31
 2 **magnus, -a, -um**: great, large; mighty, important, 29
 2 **maximus, -a, -um**: greatest, largest, 15
 2 **mille pl. mīlia, ium n.**: thousand, 9
 2 **minor, minus**: less, smaller, 7
 2 **multitūdo, inis f.**: multitude, population, people, 11
 2 **numerus, -ī m.**: number, multitude, 13
 2 **Orgetorix, -is m.**: Orgetorix, 6
 2 **passus, -ūs**: pace, step, 7
 2 **pāx, pācis f.**: peace, quiet, rest, 6
 2 **permovēō, -ēre**: to move deeply, trouble, excite, agitate, 5

- 2 **persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsum**: persuade, convince, 12
 2 **possum, posse, potuī**: be able, can, avail, 40
 2 **praestō, -āre, -stifī, -stitus**: perform, show, be better, 6
 2 **prō**: before, for, in behalf of (abl.), 16
 2 **profectio, -ōnis f.**: departure, 5
 2 **proficīscor, -ī, -fectus**: set out, depart, 23
 2 **regnum, -ī n.**: royal power, kingdom, realm, 8
 2 **rēs, reī, f.**: thing, matter, affair, business, 64
 2 **tōtus -a, -um**: whole, entire, 7
 2 **undique**: (from) everywhere, from or on all sides, 5
 2 **ut**: as, just as, when (+ ind.); (so) that, in order that, 59
 3 **ac**: and, and also, and even, 24
 3 **accipiō**: to take without effort, receive, get, accept, 10
 3 **arma, -ōrum n.**: arms, equipment, tools, 7
 3 **cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctum**: to collect; compel, 11
 3 **cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum**: to try, 6
 3 **diēs, -ēī m./f.**: day, time, season, 33
 3 **dō, dare, dedī, datum**: give; grant, 18
 3 **īdem, eadem, idem**: the same, 14
 3 **exercitus, -ūs m.**: (trained) army, 9
 3 **fīlius, -iī m.**: son, 5
 3 **ille, illa, illud**: that, those, 22
 3 **incitō (1)**: put into motion, urge on, 5
 3 **maximē**: exceedingly, especially, 6
 3 **mors, mortis, f.**: death, 9
 3 **multus, -a, -um**: much, many, 11
 3 **nē**: lest, that not, no, not, 13
 3 **neque**: and not, nor (neque...neque = neither...nor), 27
 3 **nōn**: not, by no means, not at all, 36
 3 **ob**: on account of, because of (acc.), 5
 3 **ōrātio, -ionis f.**: speaking, speech, 8
 3 **per**: through, across (acc) 18
 3 **populus, -ī m.**: people, nation, 9
 3 **probō (1)**: approve, commend, 5
 3 **Rōmānus, -a, -um**: of Rome, Roman, 15
 3 **spērō (1)**: hope (for), expect, 6
 3 **tempus, temporis, n.**: time, occasion, 11
 4 **cōnsilium, -iī n.**: plan, counsel, 12
 4 **conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus**: come together, assemble, 9
 4 **duo, duae, duo**: two, 8
 4 **existimō (1)**: judge, consider, think, 9
 4 **iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussum**: to order, command, 17
 4 **nihil**: nothing, 10
 4 **nūllus, -a, -um**: none, no, no one, 9
 4 **oppugnō (1)**: capture by assault, attack, 6
 4 **perīculum, -ī n.**: risk, danger, peril, 14
 4 **post**: after, behind (+ acc.); afterward, next, 5
 4 **prīvō (1)**: deprive of, rob, strip from (abl), 5

- 4 **quisque, quidque**: each one, each person, 9
 4 **recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum**: take back, recover, 10
 4 **singulus, -a, -um**: one by one, separate, 5
 4 **spēs, -eī f.**: hope, expectation, 6
 4 **trānseō, -īre, -ī (īvī), itus**: pass (by), 6
 4 **ūtor, -ī, ūsus sum**: use, employ (abl.), 5
 4 **videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum**: to see, 14
 5 **adventus, -ūs m.**: arrival, approach, 7
 5 **Caesar, -aris m.**: Caesar, 40
 5 **certus, -a, -um**: definite, sure, certain, reliable, 8
 5 **dum**: while, as long as, until, 6
 5 **facultās, -tātis f.**: opportunity, power, skill, ability, 5
 5 **imperō (1)**: command, order, bid, 7
 5 **lēgātus, -ī m.**: an envoy, legate, 16
 5 **legio, -ōnis f.**: legion, (~4200 soldiers), 32
 5 **licet**: impersonal, it is allowed or permitted, 5
 5 **mīles, militis, m.**: soldier, 33
 5 **mittō, -ere, mīsī, missus**: send, hurl, dismiss, 20
 5 **pervenīō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum**: arrive, 8
 5 **sī**: if (only), whether, in case that, 30
 5 **sine**: without (abl.), 8
 5 **sub**: under, below, beneath, underneath, 5
 5 **tamen**: however, nevertheless, 14
 5 **teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum**: to hold, keep, 6
 5 **ullus, -a, -um**: any, 5
 5 **volō, velle, voluī**: will, wish, be willing, 13
 6 **animadvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum**: turn mind to, notice 5
 6 **at**: but; mind you; but, you say, 7
 6 **barbarus, -a, -um**: foreign, savage, 5
 6 **cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum**: to learn, come to know, pf. know, 14
 6 **co(n)jiciō, -ere, -iēcī**: throw together, throw, take oneself, 10
 6 **cōnsuescō, -ere, cōnsuē(v)ī, -suētum**: to be accustomed, 8
 6 **ēgredior, -ī, -gressus**: go out, disembark, 5
 6 **equitātus, -ūs m.**: cavalry, 5
 6 **genus, generis, n.**: origin, kind, sort, 10
 6 **gravis, -e**: heavy, serious, severe; venerable, 9
 6 **hostis, -is m./f.**: stranger, enemy, foe, 43
 6 **longus -a, -um**: long, 8
 6 **magnitūdo, -inis f.**: greatness, size, 5
 6 **manus, manūs, f.**: hand; group, 9
 6 **nam**: for, 9
 6 **nāvis, nāvis, f.**: ship, boat, 23
 6 **nisi**: if not, unless 6
 6 **paulus, -a, -um**: little, small, 9
 6 **pēs, pedis m.**: foot, 5
 6 **plērumque**: for the most part, mostly, commonly, 5
 6 **propter**: on account of, because of, 5
 6 **pugna, -ae f.**: battle, fight, 7

- 6 **pugnō (1)**: to fight, 9
 6 **subsequor, -ī, secūtus sum**: follow after or behind, 7
 6 **summus, -a, -um**: top of, highest (part of) 10
 6 **telum, -ī n.**: projective, weapon, blow, 9
 6 **ūsus, -ūs m.**: use, practice, application, 10
 7 **aliquī, -qua, -quod**: some, any, definite, 8
 7 **coepī, coepisse, coeptum**: to begin, 9
 7 **compleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum**: fill up, fill, 6
 7 **conspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus**: see, behold, 5
 7 **dēsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrum**: be lacking, lack, fail, 6
 7 **eques, equitis m.**: horseman, rider, 12
 7 **ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus**: carry, bear, endure, 7
 7 **impetus, -ūs m.**: attack, assault, onset, 7
 7 **ordō, -inis m.**: order, line, array; status, 6
 7 **perturbō (1)**: confuse, disturb, throw into confusion, 6
 7 **pīmus -a -um**: first, 15
 7 **pūblicus, -a, -um**: public, common, 11
 7 **signum -ī, n.**: sign, signal; gesture, seal, 5
 7 **subsidiū, ī n.**: reserve troops; third line of battle, 5
 7 **tantus, -a, -um**: so great, so large, 10
 7 **tum**: then, at that time, 12
 7 **uterque, utraque, utrumque**: each (of two) 8
 8 **Britannia, -ae f.**: Britain, 6
 8 **castra, -ōrum n.**: camp, encampment, 23
 8 **dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum**: report, offer 8
 8 **dēmonstrō (1)**: to show, demonstrate, 5
 8 **nox, noctis, f.**: night, 9
 8 **obsēs, obsidis m./f.**: hostage, 5
 8 **petō, petere, petīvī, petītum**: seek, aim at, 7
 8 **sed: but, moreover, however**, 13
 8 **sēsē**: emphatic form of reflexive sē, 14
 8 **subitō**: suddenly, 5
 8 **superō (1)**: surpass, overcome, 6
 8 **superus, -a, -um**: upper, higher, above, 9
 8 **veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus**: come, go, 14
 9 **accidō, -ere, accidī**: to happen, fall to, 13
 9 **complūres n.**: several, 5
 9 **discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum**: to go away, depart, 9
 9 **efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus**: make, form, 5
 9 **impedīmentum, -ī n.**: baggage, impediment, 6
 9 **ita**: so, thus, 7
 9 **itaque**: and so, 6
 10 **casus, -ūs m.**: misfortune, mishap; fall 5
 10 **consuetūdo, -inis f.**: custom, habit, 5
 10 **etsī**: even if, although, though, 5
 10 **intermittō, -ere**: interrupt, discontinue, leave off, 5
 10 **maior, maius**: greater, 6
 11 **cohors, cohortis f.**: cohort, company, troop 14

- 11 **interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum**: kill, slay, destroy, 14
 11 **interim**: meanwhile, in the meantime, 5
 11 **premō, -ere, pressī, pressus**: check, pursue, control, 7
 11 **sustineō, -ēre, -uī**: hold up, sustain, 8
 12 **celeritās, -tātis f.**: quickness, swiftness, speed, 5
 12 **celeriter**: quickly, swiftly, speedily, 6
 12 **circiter**: (round) about, not far from, 7
 12 **nuntius, -iī m.**: messenger, 6
 12 **quantus, -a, -um**: how great, much, many, 6
 13 **contrōversia, -ae f.**: dispute, debate, 7
 13 **disciplīna, -ae f.**: training, instruction, 5
 13 **Druidēs, -um m.**: Druids, 6
 13 **praemium, -i n.**: reward, prize, 5
 14 **ibi**: there, in that place, 5
 14 **littera, -ae f.**: letter of the alphabet, letter, literature, 12
 14 **ratio, ratiōnis, f.**: calculation, account, method, 5
 15 **circumveniō, -īre**: to come around, encircle, 6
 15 **vīta, -ae, f.**: life, 5
 16 **ponō, ponere, posuī, positum**: to put, place, 6
 17 **concilium, -iī n.**: meeting, rendezvous, 6
 18 **Ambiorix, -rigis m.**: Ambiorix, 15
 18 **Cicero, Cicerōnis m.**: Cicero 14
 18 **Cotta, -ae m.**: Cotta, 10
 18 **Crassus, -i m.**: Crassus, 5
 18 **Eburōnēs, -um m.**: Eburones (German), 5
 18 **hiberna, -ōrum n.**: winter-quarters, 26
 18 **Labiēnus, i m.**: Labienus, 5
 18 **Lucius, -i m.**: Lucius, 10
 18 **Nerviī, -iōrum m.**: Nervii (Belgic Gauls) 9
 18 **Quintus, -i m.**: Quintus, 6
 18 **Sabīnus, i m.**: Sabinus, 7
 18 **Titurius, -i m.**: Titurius, 8
 19 **ascendō, -ere, -i, -ēnsus**: ascend, mount 2
 19 **oppugnātio, -tiōnis f.**: an assault, 6
 19 **resistō, -ere, -stīti**: stand still, halt; oppose, 5
 19 **vallum, -i n.**: wall, fortification, palisade, 11
 20 **Aduātucī, -ōrum m.**: Aduatuci (in Belgae), 5
 20 **commūnis, -e**: common, 6
 21 **salūs, -ūtis f.**: safety, refuge; health, 10
 21 **tūtus, -a, -um**: safe, secure, guarded, 7
 22 **calamitās, -tātis f.**: loss, misfortune, calamity, disaster, 5
 22 **quidem**: indeed, in fact, certainly, 6
 22 **victoria, -ae f.**: victory, 7
 23 **relinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictum**: to leave behind, 7
 25 **accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus**: approach, 5
 28 **mūnītio, -iōnis f.**: fortification, paving, 7
 28 **turris, turris f.**: tower, walled tower, 7
 32 **Pullo, Pullōnis, m.**: Pullo, 6 and **Vorēnus, -i m.**: Vorenus, 5

Abbreviations

| | | | |
|---------|-----------------|---------|----------------------------|
| abs. | absolute | m. | masculine |
| acc. | accusative | n. | neuter |
| act. | active | nom. | nominative |
| adj. | adjective | obj. | object |
| adv. | adverb | PPP | Perfect passive participle |
| app. | appositive | ppl. | participle |
| comp. | comparative | pass | passive |
| dat. | dative | pf. | perfect |
| dep. | deponent | pl. | plural |
| d.o. | direct object | plpf. | pluperfect |
| f. | feminine | pred. | predicate |
| fut. | future | prep. | preposition |
| gen. | genitive | pres. | present |
| imp. | imperative | pron. | pronoun |
| impf. | imperfect | reflex. | reflexive |
| impers. | impersonal | rel. | relative |
| indic. | indicative | seq. | sequence |
| i.o. | indirect object | sg. | singular |
| inf. | infinitive | subj. | subject or subjunctive |
| inter. | interrogative | superl. | superlative |
| l. | line | voc. | vocative |
| ll. | lines | | |

Citations in Caesar

The universal method for referring to pages in any edition of Caesar's *Commentarii de Bellō Gallicō* is through a sequence of two or even three numbers: e.g. IV.24.2 or 4.24. The first number denotes the book in *de Bellō Gallicō*; the second number, the paragraph; and the third number, if it is included, a subsection about the length of one sentence. Throughout this commentary I have chosen to use Roman numerals to indicate the book number (e.g. IV), but it is not uncommon for scholars to use Arabic numerals (e.g. 4). The paragraph number is always an Arabic numeral and is uniform from one edition of Caesar to the next (e.g. IV.24, 4.24). In this book I place the paragraph number in boldface at the beginning of each paragraph. This system allows readers to pick up any edition of Caesar in English or Latin and, regardless of the page numbering of that edition, locate a particular passage in Caesar.

Each paragraph in *de Bellō Gallicō* can also be divided into subsections, which may be included or left out of citations (e.g. 4.24.1 or simply 4.24). In this commentary I have chosen for pedagogical reasons to include the numbers of these subsections within the text itself. In a classroom setting, teachers can conveniently ask individual students to recite and translate by subsection and not have to refer awkwardly to the initial words in each sentence.

Line numbers, located in the inside margin of the text, are peculiar to this commentary. I have included them so that I can efficiently refer to words and phrases in the grammar and readers can easily locate those words and phrases. While you can refer to the line numbers in class discussions, use only the book, paragraph, and subsection numbers when you cite Caesar in written work.

I'm going to spare the defeated, I'm going to speak to the crowd.
I'm going to spare the defeated, 'cause I'm going to speak to the crowd.
I'm going to teach peace to the conquered, I'm going to tame the proud.

- Bob Dylan

To make the ancients speak, we must feed them with our own blood.

- von Wilamowitz-Moellendorff

1.1 Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, 1
 aliam Aquītānī, tertiam quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur.

2. Hī omnēs linguā, īnstitūtīs, legibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquītānīs
 Garumna flūmen, ā Belgīs Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit.

3. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, proptereā quod ā cultū atque 5
 hūmānitāte Prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs
 saepe commeant atque ea quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent
 important, 4. proximīque sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt,
 quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Quā de causā Helvetiī quoque reliquōs
 Gallōs virtūte praecedunt, quod ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs 10
 contendunt, cum aut suīs finibus eōs prohibent aut ipsī in eōrum finibus
 bellum gerunt.

5. Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est, initium capit ā
 flūmine Rhodanō, continētur Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, fīnibus Belgārum,
 attingit etiam ab Sēquanīs et Helvētiīs flūmen Rhēnum, vergit ad 15
 septentriōnēs. 6. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae fīnibus oriuntur, pertinent ad
 inferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī, spectant in septentriōnem et orientem
 sōlem. 7. Aquitania ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pyrenaeōs montēs et eam partem
 Ōceanī quae est ad Hispāniam pertinet; spectat inter occāsum sōlis et
 septentriōnēs. 20

Aquitānī, -ōrum m.: Aquitani, 2
Aquitania, -ae f.: Aquitania, 1
attingō, -ere, tigī, tāctum: touch to, border, 1
Celtae, -ārum m.: Celts, 1
commeō (1): to travel, go to and fro, 1
contendō, -ere, -ī, -ntus: strive; hasten, 4
continenter: continuously, incessantly, 1
cotīdiānus, -a, -um: daily, of every day, 3
cultus, -ūs m.: culture, refinement, 2
differō, -ferre,: differ, carry different ways, 2
dīvidō, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsus: divide, distribute, 4
effēminō (1): soften, make into women, 1
extrēmus, -a, -um: farthest, outermost, 2
Garumna, -ae f.: Garumna river, 4
Hispania, -ae f.: Spain, 2
hūmānitās, -tātis f.: humanity, nature, 1
importō (1): bring in, introduce, import, 1
incolō, -ere, -uī: inhabit, dwell on, 3
inferus, -a, -um: below, lower, 3
īnstitutum, ī n.: institution, practice, custom, 2

lēx, -lēgis f.: law, regulation, decree, 3
lingua, ae f.: tongue, language, 2
Mātrōna, -ae f.: Matrona (Marne) river, 1
mercātor, -ōris m.: merchant, trader, 1
minimē: least of all, least, 1
mons, montis m.: mountain, mount, 4
occāsus, -ūs m.: fall, destruction, 2
Oceānus, ī m.: Oceanus, 3
orior, -īrī, ortus: arise, rise, spring, 3
praecēdō, -ere, cessī, -cessum: surpass, 1
proptereā: on this account, therefore, 4
Pyrenaeus, -a, -um: of the Pyrenees, 1
quoque: also, 2
saepe: often, 3
septentriōnēs, -um m.: north, (7 stars), 3
Sēquana, -ae: Sequana (Seine) River, 1
sōl, sōlis m.: sun, 3
spectō (1): watch, observe, behold, inspect, 3
trans; over, across (+ acc.), 3
vergō, -ere, versī: turn, bend, 1

- 1 **est...dīvīsa**: *is divided*; dīvīsa is a predicate adjective and not part of a perfect pass. verb
quārum ūnam...aliā...tertiā: *of which (parts) one (part)...another (part)...a third (part)*; a genitive at the beginning of the clause is often, as here, a partitive gen. (gen. of whole)
- 2 **Aquītānī**: *Aquitanians (inhabit)*; add incolunt which is missing through ellipsis (omission)
Tertiā (incolunt) quī...: *(those) who...* (inhabit) *the third*; the missing antecedent of the relative clause is subject of missing incolunt
ipsōrum linguā: *in the language of (these) very ones*; i.e. of the Gauls, ipse usually modifies a noun, which is missing and must be supplied; linguā is an ablative of respect (in respect to...)
nostrā: *in our (language)*; supply linguā
Celtae...Gallī: nom. predicates of appellatur
- 3 **linguā, institūtīs, lēgibus**: *in...in...in...*; “in respect to...”; all three are abl. of respect
- 4 **Garumna flūmen (dīvidit)**: subject, add verb
Matrona et Sēquana: nom. pl. with a 3rd sg. verb because the rivers form a single boundary; supply Gallōs as acc. direct object
- 5 **Hōrum omnium**: *of all these*; or “among all these,” partitive gen., as in line 1, Caesar often uses a a genitive at the beginning of a clause and then specifies the parts within the clause
propterea quod: *because*; lit. “on this account because,” which is a pleonasm (redundancy)
- 6 **Prōvinciae**: *of the Province*; i.e. Gallia Transalpina, the area in southern France controlled by the Romans. Although the word prōvincia is a general term, the Romans referred to this province as “the Province”. This edition uses the capital “P” to distinguish it from other provinces.
- 6 **longissimē**: *very far*; superlative adverb longē
ad eōs *to those...*; eōs is demonstrative
- 7 **ea quae** *those things which...*; neut. pl.
- ad effēminandōs...**: *for softening...*; lit. “for courage going to be softened” ad + gerundive (fut. pass. pple) often expresses purpose; when translating, readers should employ a gerund-gerundive flip: translate the gerundive as a gerund (e.g. softening) and the noun modified by the gerundive as an object of the gerund
- 8 **Germānīs**: dat. with special adj. proximī
- 9 **quibuscum**: cum quibus
Quā dē causā: *for which reason*; “concerning which reason” quā modifies causā; as often, Caesar places the adjective, here a relative adj., before the preposition
- 10 **virtūte**: *in (respect to) valor*; abl. respect
quod: *because*
cum...prohibent...gerunt: *when...*; cum + indicative, not a preposition with suīs finibus.
- 11 **suīs finibus**: *from their borders*; abl. of separation (a construction which includes but is not limited to place from which), governed by prohibent, “(Helvetians) keep”
suīs: *their*; Helvetians’, reflexive possessive
eōs: *them*; i.e. Germans, personal pronoun
ipsī: *(they) themselves*; Helvetians
- 12 **eōrum**: *their*; i.e. Germans
- 13 **eōrum**: *of these (three parts)*; partitive gen.
obtinēre: ind. discourse (that clause), Gallōs is acc. subj. and quam is acc. d.o.
dictum est: *it has been said*; as in line 2 above
- 14 **continētur**: governs all three abl. of means, which are missing conjunctions, asyndeton
- 15 **ab Sēquānīs...**: *from (the side of)...*
- 16 **oriuntur**: *rise*; pres. deponent, orior
- 17 **spectant in septentrionem**: *looks to the northern...*; i.e. opens up to the northeast
orientem: *eastern*; “rising” sun; pres. pple.
- 18 **eam partem**: *that part*; demonstrative
- 19 **ad Hispāniam**: *near Hispania*; with est
spectat: *looks to...*; i.e. opens up to...

Gerund-Gerundive Flip

A gerundive (effeminandus,-a,-um, line 7) is a future passive participle. It is a verbal adjective which agrees with a noun in case, number, and gender. Because it is awkward to translate (e.g. going to be softened), readers should often employ a “gerund-gerundive flip” and translate the gerundive as a gerund, a verbal noun (e.g. softening), and the noun modified by the gerundive as the gerund’s object. Ad + gerund + object is in fact uncommon in Latin but it is an easy way to translate ad + noun + gerundive into suitable English. This is a popular construction in Caesar. So, be prepared.

Flip

Ad animōs effēminandōs

for courage (going) to be softened

→

ad effēminandum animōs

for softening courage

2.1 Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et ditissimus Orgetorīx. Is, M. 1
 Messālā, et M. Pīsōne cōsulibus, regnī cupiditāte inductus coniūrātiōnem
 nōbilitātis fēcit et civitatī persuāsit ut dē finibus suis cum omnibus copiīs
 exīrent: 2. perfacile esse, cum virtūte omnibus praestārent, tōtīus Galliae
 imperiō potīrī. 5

3. Id hōc facilius eīs persuāsit, quod undique locī natūrā Helvetiī
 continentur: ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēno lātissimō atque altissimō, quī
 agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dividit; alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō,
 quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodānō,
 quī provinciam nostram ab Helvetiīs dividit. 4. Hīs rēbus fiēbat ut et minus 10
 lātē vagārentur et minus facile finitimīs bellum īferre possent; 5. Quā ex
 parte hominēs bellandī cupidī magnō dolōre afficiēbantur. 6. Prō multitudīne
 autem hominum et prō glōriā bellī atque fortitudinis angustōs sē finēs habēre
 arbitrābantur, quī in longitūdinem mīlia passuum CCXL, in lātitudinem
 CLXXX patēbant. 15

3.1 Hīs rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permōtī cōstituērunt ea
 quae ad proficiscendum pertinērent comparāre, iumentōrum et carrōrum
 quam maximum numerum coemere, sementēs quam maximās facere, ut in
 itinere cōpia frumentī suppeteret, cum proximīs cīvitātibus pācem et
 amīcitiā cōfirmāre. 2. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās biennium sibi satis esse 20
 dūxērunt; in tertium annum profectiōnem lēge cōfirmant.

addūcō, -ere, duxī, ductum: draw/lead to, 4
adficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum: affect, afflict, 3
angustus, -a, -um: narrow, confined, 4
auctōritās, -tātis f.: influence, clout, 3
bellō (1): to wage war, fight, 1
biennium, -ī n.: a period of two years, 1
carrus, -ī m.: wagon for, baggage, wagon, 2
coemō, -ere, -ēmī, -emptum: buy up, 1
comparō (1): prepare, get ready, provide, 4
conficiō, -ere: to exhaust, finish, 4
coniūrātiō, -ōnis f.: pact, union, conspiracy 3
cōsul, -is m.: consul, 3
cupiditās, -tātis f.: desire, eagerness for, 1
cupidus, -a, -um: desirous, eager, keen, 2
dīs, dītis adj.: rich, wealthy, 2
dīvidō, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsus: divide, distribute, 4
dolor, -ōris m.: pain, grief, anger, passion, 2
exeō, -īre, -īī (ivī), -ītus: go out, 4
fiō, fierī, factus: become, be made, 3
fortitūdō, -dinis f.: strength, courage, 1
glōria, -ae, f.: glory, fame, 2
indūcō, -ere, duxī, ductum: draw/lead in, 1
iumentum, -ī n.: beast of burden, 1

Iūra, -ae f.: Iura (a mountain range), 3
lacus, -ūs m.: lake, pond, pool, 2
latē: widely, far and wide, 2
lātitudo, -dinis f.: breadth, width, 1
latus, -a, -um: wide, 1
Lemannus, -ī m.: (w/ lacus) Lake Geneva, 1
lēx, -lēgis f.: law, regulation, decree, 3
longitudo, -inis f.: length, width, 2
M.: Marcus, 3
Messāla, -ae f.: Messala, 1
mons, montis m.: mountain, mount, 4
natūra, -ae, f.: nature, 3
nōbilis, -e: noble, renowned, 3
nōbilitās, -tātis f.: nobility, renown, 1
pateō, -ēre, -uī: lie open, extend, 1
perfacilis, -e: very easy; *adv.* very easily 2
Pisō, Pīsōnis m.: Piso, 2
potior, -īrī, -ītus: gain, win (*abl.*), 2
satis: enough, sufficient, 2
sementis, -is f.: sowing, planting, 1
suppetō, -ere, ivī, itum: suffice, be at hand 2
vagor, -ārī: wander, roam, go to and fro, 1

- 1 **nōbilissimus, ditissimus**: superlative adjs.
fuit: pf. sum, esse
M. Messālā et M. Pisōne cōsulibus: *when Marcus Messala and Marcus (Pupius) Piso were consuls*; “with Messala and Piso (being) consuls” abl. abs. i.e. 61 BC, Romans named the year after their annually elected consuls; since there is no pple. for sum, esse, the subject and predicate are the abl. abs.
- 2 **regnī**: *for the kingship*; objective gen. governed by cupiditāte, equivalent to “he desires kingship”
- 3 **persuāsit ut...**: *persuaded (dative) that...*; this common verb in Caesar governs an indirect command (ut + impf. subj. in secondary seq.)
- 4 **exīrent**: *they come out*; impf. subjunctive, exeō, exīre in an ind. command, which can often be translated as an inf.: “persuaded...to come out”
perfacile esse...: *(and) that it is very easy...*; ind. discourse also governed by persuāsit above; asyndeton, supply a conjunction between the ind. command above and perfacile esse
cum...praestārent: *since they excelled*; causal with impf. subjunctive governing abl. respect
tōtius: gen. sg. (-ius) modifying Galliae
- 5 **potīri**: *to possess*; dep. inf. potior governs an ablative object
- 6 **id...persuāsit**: *he persuaded them (to do) this*
hōc...quod: *by this (reason)...because*; abl. of cause
facilius: comparative adv. facilis, facile
- 7 **ūnā ex parte**: *on one side*; “from one part”
flūmine Rhēnō: abl. means; supply the verb “continentur,” an example of ellipsis
- 8 **agrum Helvētium**: *Helvetian land*
alterā ex parte: *on another side*; see line 7
monte Iūrā: *by Iura range*; add “continentur”
- 9 **tertīā (ex parte)**: parallel with line 7 and 8
lacū Lemannō: abl. means, add “continentur”
- 10 **hīs rēbus**: *because of...*; abl. of cause
fiēbat ut: *it happened that...*; fiō governs ut + impf. subjunctive (noun result clause); the subjunctives are impf. in secondary sequence because the main verb is impf.
- 11 **vagārentur, possent**: impf. subj. vagor and possum; in result clauses these are translated as normal impf. indicatives; vagor is deponent
minus: comparative adverb; minor, minus
- 11 **facile**: *easily*; irreg. adverb from facilis, facile
fnitīmīs: *on neighbors*; dat. of compound verb (the infinitive inferre)
quā ex parte: *for which reason*; “from which respect”
- 12 **bellandī**: *of waging war*; gerund, gen. sg. with the adj. cupidī which in turn modifies hominēs
Prō...prō: *because of...*; “in proportion to” or “according to,” prō is causal in force
- 13 **sē habēre**: *that they had*; ind. discourse in secondary sequence: angustōs finēs is acc. d.o.
- 14 **milia passuum**: *miles*; “thousands of paces,” a mile is 1000 steps; subject of patēbant
- 16 **adductī...permōtī**: *Helvetians influenced... and moved*; the participles are nom. pl. agreeing with a missing subject
ea quae: *those (things) which*; ea is object of comparāre and is translated as a demonstrative
- 17 **ea quae...pertinērent**: *those (things) which pertain/would pertain*; a relative clause of characteristic clarifies what sort of thing the antecedent is (i.e. ea) and can be translated here with or without modal “would”
ad proficiscendum: *for setting out*; gerund (verbal noun) + ad expresses purpose
comparāre, coemere, facere, confirmāre: complementary infinitives with cōstituērunt, supply the missing conjunction “et”
- 18 **quam maximum**: *as great...as possible*; quam + superlative is frequently translated “as X as possible,” here it modifies numerum
quam maximās: see above, with sementēs
ut...suppeteret: *so that...might suffice*; ut + impf. subj., purpose clause in secondary seq.
ad...conficiendās: *for accomplishing...*; “for those things going to be accomplished” ad + gerundive (fut. pass. pple modifying rēs) often expresses purpose; when translating, employ a gerund-gerundive flip: translate as a gerund and eās rēs as the object of the gerund
biennium...esse: *that...*; ind. discourse
sibi: *for themselves*; dat. of interest/advantage
- 21 **in...annum**: *into the...*; i.e. “during,” 58 BC

Translating Subjunctives

With the exception of purpose clauses (*may, might*), conditional sentences (*if should, would; if were, would; if had, would have*), and some relative clauses of characteristic (*would*), almost all the subjunctive constructions that readers will encounter do not require a special translation in English. Readers should simply identify the tense and translate the subjunctive as one would an indicative. Imperfect and pluperfect subjunctives are the most common tenses in secondary sequence.

3.3 Ad eās rēs conficiendās Orgetorīx dēligitur. Is sibi lēgatiōnem ad 1
 cīvitātēs suscēpit. In eō itinere persuādet Casticō, Catamantaloedis filiō,
 Sēquanō, cuius pater rēgnum in Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat et ā
 senātū populī Rōmānī amicus appellātus erat, ut rēgnum in cīvitāte suā
 occupāret, quod pater ante habuerit; 4. itemque Dumnorigī Haeduō, fratrī 5
 Dīviciācī, quī eō tempore principātum in cīvitāte obtinēbat ac maximē plebī
 acceptus erat, ut idem cōnārētur persuādet eīque filiam suam in
 matrimōnium dat. 5. Perfacile factū esse illīs probat cōnāta perficere,
 proptereā quod ipse suae civitātis imperium obtentūrus esset: 6. nōn esse
 dūbium quin tōtīus Galliae plūrimum Helvetiī possent; sē suīs copiīs suōque 10
 exercitū illīs regna conciliātūrum cōfirmat. 7. Hāc ōrātiōne adductī inter sē
 fidem et iusiūrandum dant et regnō occupātō per trēs potentissimōs ac
 firmissimōs populōs tōtīus Galliae sēsē potīrī posse sperant.

4.1 Ea rēs est Helvētiīs per indicium ēnūntiāta. Mōribus suīs Orgetorīgem 15
 ex vinculis causam dīcere coēgērunt; damnātum poenam sequī oportēbat, ut
 ignī cremārētur.

2. Diē cōstitutā causae dictiōnis Orgetorīx ad iudicium omnem suam
 familiam, ad hominum mīlia decem, undique coēgit, et omnēs clientēs
 obaeratōsque suōs, quōrum magnum numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit;
 per eōs nē causam dīceret sē ēripuit. 3. Cum cīvitās ob eam rem incitāta armis 20
 iūs suum exsequī cōnārētur multitudinemque hominum ex agrīs magistrātūs
 cōgerent, Orgetorīx mortuus est; 4. neque abest suspiciō, ut Helvetiī
 arbitrantur, quin ipse sibi mortem conscīverit.

addūcō, -ere, duxī, ductum: draw/lead to, 4
amicus, -a, -um: friendly, 1
ante: before, in front of (acc); *adv.* before, 4
Casticus, -ī m.: Casticus, 1
Catamantaloedis, -is m.: Catamantaloedis, 1
cliens, -entis m.: client, dependent, 4
conciliō (1): win over, unite, 1
condūcō, -ere: bring together, gather, 2
conficiō, -ere: to exhaust, finish, 4
consciscō, -ire: to resolve, decree; bring on oneself, 1
cremō (1): burn, consumed by fire, 2
damnō (1): condemn, punish, convict, 1
decem: ten, 1
dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lectum: choose, elect, select, 2
dictio, -ōnis m.: pleading, saying; speech, 1
Diviciacus, -ī m.: Diviciacus, 1
dubius, -a, -um: doubtful, wavering, 1
Dumnorigis, -īgis m.: Dumnorigis, 1
ēnūntiō (1): announce, speak out, divulge, 1
ēripīō, -ere, -uī, reptus: rescue, take from, 4
exsequor, sequī, secūtum: follow/carry out 1

factū: to do (supine), 2
familia, -ae f.: family, household, 1
fidēs, eī f.: faith, honor, 4
filia, -iae f.: daughter, 1
firmus, -a, -um: strong, steadfast, 1
frāter, -tris m.: brother, 2
Haeduus, -a, -um: Haeduan, Aeduan, 1
ignis, ignis, m.: fire, 4
indiciū, -iī n.: information, evidence, 1
item: also, likewise, in like manner, 3
iudiciū, -ī n.: decision, judgment; trial 3
iūs, iūris n.: justice, law, right, 2
ius-iūrandum, iūrisiūrandī n.: sworn oath, 2
lēgatio, -ōnis f.: embassy, envoy, 2
magistratus, -ūs m.: magistrate, officer, 3
mātrimōnium, -iī n.: wedlock, marriage, 1
moriōr, morī, mortuus sum: die, 2
mōs, mōris m.: custom, manner, law, 4
obaerātus, -a, -um: indebted, 1
occupō (1): seize, occupy, 4
oportet: it is proper, fitting, necessary, 2

pater, patris, m.: father, 4
perfacilis, -e: very easy; *adv.* very easily²
perficiō, -ere: complete, accomplish, 3
plebs, plēbis, f.: common people, masses, 2
plūrimus, -a, -um: most, very many, 4
poena, poenae, f.: punishment, penalty, 3
potēns, -entis: powerful, ruling (*gen.*), 2
potior, -īrī, -ītus: gain, win (*abl.*), 2

principātus, -ūs m.: leadership, rule, 2
propterea: on this account, therefore, 4
quīn: (but) that, who (not), 2
senātus, -ūs m.: senate, council of elders, 1
sequor, -ī, secūtus: follow, pursue, 4
suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum: undertake, receive, 1
suspicio, -ciōnis f.: mistrust, suspicion, 4
vinculum, -ī n.: bond, chain, 2

-
- 1 **ad...conficiendās:** *for accomplishing...*; “for those things going to be accomplished” ad + gerundive (fut. pass. pple modifying *rēs*) often expresses purpose; when translating, employ a gerund-gerundive flip: translate as a gerund and *eās rēs* as the object of the gerund
sibi: *for himself*; dat. of interest/advantage
- 2 **eō:** *this*; demonstrative pronoun
persuādet Casticō...ut: *persuades Casticus...* *that*; verb governs dat. and ind. command
- 3 **cuius:** *whose*; gen. sg. relative pronoun
multōs annōs: *for...*; acc. of duration
- 4 **appellātus erat:** *had been named*; + predicate nominative; the verb behaves as a linking verb
ut...occupāret: *that he occupy*; ind. command with *persuādet* can often, but not always, be translated as an infinitive: “to occupy...”
- 5 **quod...habuerit:** *which...had...*; pf. subj., relative clause of characteristic
Dumnorīgī Haeduō: (*he persuades Dumnorix the Aeduan*); dat. i.o. of missing *persuādet* in a construction parallel to *Casticō* above
- 6 **eō tempore:** *at...*; abl. of time when
maximē...acceptus erat: *had been especially (well) received*; governs a dative of agent (by...)
- 7 **ut...cōnārētur:** *that...*; ind. command governed by *persuādet*; impf. deponent *cōnārēdem:* *the same thing*; id-dem, neuter acc. d.o., referring to *ut...occupāret* in ll. 4-5 above
eī: *to him*; dat. sg. indirect object with dat
- 8 **perfacile...esse...perficere:** *that it is very easy to...*; ind. disc. governed by *probat*; *perficere* is inf. subject and *perfacile* is the pred. adj.
factū: *to do*; “in doing” abl. sg. supine (PPP stem + *ū*), an abl. of respect limiting *perfacile*
illīs: *for those (men)*; dat. interest
conāta: *the things attempted*; PPP, neuter pl.
- 9 **propterea quod:** *because*; lit. “on this account because” which is a pleonasm (redundancy)
ipse: (*he*) *himself*; i.e. Orgetorix
obtentūrus esset: *would attain*; “was going to attain,” fut. pple + sum (here impf. subj.) is a periphrastic fut.; verbs in subordinate clauses in ind. disc. are placed in the subjunctive mood
nōn esse dūbium: *that he did not doubt*
- 10 **quīn...plūrimum possent:** *that...they would have very much power*; a common idiom; *quīn* + subj. following a verb of doubt or hindering
- 11 **conciāturum (esse):** *that they will win over*; fut. infinitive; ind. disc., *sē* is acc. subj.
- 12 **ius-iurandum:** *a sworn oath*; as one or two words; both decline; gerundive *iurō, -āre*
- 13 **tōtius:** *of the entire*; gen. sg. with *Galliae*
sēsē: *that they*; acc. subject of *posse*
potīrī: *to possess*; dep. inf., *regnō* as abl. obj.
- 14 **Ea rēs:** *this matter*; i.e. Orgetorix's conspiracy
est...ēnūntiāta: *ēnūntiāta est*; pf. passive
per indicium: i.e. through spies and informers
mōribus suīs: *according to their customs*; “from their customs,” often with “ex” denotes a source of action (separation) not abl. cause
- 15 **causam dicere:** *to plead the case*; idiom
damnātum...sequī: *that (he) if condemned follow...*; deponent inf., PPP is conditional
oportēbat: *it was necessary that*; impersonal
ut...cremārētur: *that...*; ind. command
ignī: ablative of means; i-stem 3rd decl. noun
- 17 **diē cōstitūtā:** *on the...*; abl. of time when
causae dictionis: *for the pleading of the case*
ad...mīlia decem: *around*; ad means “up to” or “nearly” throughout this passage
- 18 **cōgīt:** *gathered*; *cōgō* (co-agō) means (a) compel or (b) drive together; cf. ll. 15 and 22
- 19 **eōdem:** *in the same (place)*; abl. place where
- 20 **nē...diceret:** *so that...not*; neg. purpose. cf. 15
cum...conārētur...cōgerent: *after...*; cum clause with two impf. subjunctives
exsequī: pres. dep. infinitive, *exsequor*
ob eam rem: *on account of this matter*
- 22 **mortuus est:** *died*; pf. deponent, *morior*
neque abest suspiciō: i.e. “there is a suspicion that...” litotes; equiv. to “there is no doubt...”
ut...: *as*; common meaning with indicative
- 23 **quīn sibi...conscīverit:** *that he brought...on himself*; *quīn* + pf. subj. *conscīcō*, after a verb of doubting or hindering; cf. line 9 above

5.1 Post eius mortem nihilō minus Helvētiī id quod cōstituerant facere 1
 cōnantur, ut ē finibus suīs exeant. 2. Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse
 arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vīcōs ad
 quadringentōs, reliqua prīvāta aedificia incendunt; 3. frūmentum omne,
 praeter quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrunt, ut domum redītīōnis spē 5
 sublātā parātiōrēs ad omnia perīcula subeunda essent; trium mensum molita
 cibāria sibi quemque domō efferre iubent. Persuādent Rauracīs et Tulingīs et
 Latobrīgīs finitimīs utī, eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō, oppidīs suīs vīcīsque exustīs ūnā
 cum eīs proficīscantur, Boiōsque, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum
 Noricum transīerant Noreiamque oppugnābant, receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi 10
 adsciscunt.

6.1 Erant omnīnō itinera duo, quibus itineribus domō exīre possent: ūnum
 per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Iūram et flūmen
 Rhodanum, vix quā singulī carrī dūcerentur, mōns autem altissimus
 impendēbat, ut facile perpaucī prohibēre possent; 2. alterum per provinciam 15
 nostram, multō facilius atque expeditius, proptereā quod inter finēs
 Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit isque
 nōnnūllis locīs vadō trānsītur.

3. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvētiōrum finibus
 Genava. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Allobrogibus sēsē vel 20
 persuāsūrōs, quod nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidērentur,
 existimābant vel vī coactūrōs ut per suōs finēs eōs īre paterentur. Omnibus
 rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātis diem dīcunt, quā diē ad rīpam Rhodanī
 omnēs conveniant. Is diēs erat a. d. V. Kal. Apr. L. Pīsōne, A. Gabīniō
 cōnsulibus. 25

a(d)sciscō, -ere, -scivī: receive, admit, adopt, 1
aedificium, -iī n.: building, edifice, 2
Allobrogēs, -um: Allobroges, 3
angustus, -a, -um: narrow, confined, 4
April, Aprilis m.: April, 2
Boii, -ōrum m.: Boians (Bohemia) 1
bonus, -a, -um: good, kind(ly), useful 2
carrus, -i m.: wagon for baggage, wagon, 2
cibāria, -ōrum n.: rations, rationed food, 1
comburō, -ere, -ussī, -ustum: burn up, 1
comparō (1): prepare, get ready, provide, 4
cōnsul, -is m.: consul, 3
d.: diem; day, 1
difficilis, difficile: hard, difficult, 1
domus, -ūs f.: house, home, dwelling, 3
duodecim: twelve, 1
efferō, -ferre, -tulī, ēlātus: raise, lift up 4

eō, ire, ivī: to go, come, 4
exeō, -ire, -iī (ivī), -itus: go out, 4
expeditus, -a, -um: unimpeded, fast, 4
extrēmus, -a, -um: farthest, outermost, 2
exūrō, -ere, -ussī, -ustum: burn up, 1
fluō, -ere, flūxī, flūxus: flow, 1
Gabinus, -ī m.: Gabinius, 1
Genava, -ae f.: Geneva, 3
iam: now, already, soon, 4
impendeō, -ēre: hang over, threaten, 1
incendō, -ere, -ī, -ēnsus: kindle, burn, 2
incolō, -ere, -uī: inhabit, dwell on, 3
Iūra, -ae f.: Iura (a mountain range), 3
Kal.: Kalends, 1
L.: Lucius, 2
Latobrīgī, -ōrum m.: Latobrigians (Latovici) 1
mensis, -is m.: month, 2

molō, -ere, moluī, molitum: grind (in a mill), mill, 1
mons, montis m.: mountain, mount, 4
nondum: not yet, 3
nōnnullus, -a, -um: some, not none, 2
Noreia, -ae f.: Noreia, 1
Noricum, -ī m.: Noricum (modern Austria) 1
nūper: recently, lately, newly, 1
omnīnō: altogether, wholly, entirely, 2
oppidum, -ī n.: town, 4
pācō (1): make peaceful, pacify, 1
parō (1): prepare, make ready, 3
patior, -ī, passus: suffer, endure; allow, 2
perpaucī, -ae, -a: very few, 1
Pisō, Pīsōnis m.: Piso, 2
pons, pontis m.: a bridge, 2
portō (1): carry, bear, bring, 2
praeter: beyond, past (+ acc.), 2

propterea: on this account, therefore, 4
quadringenti: four hundred, 2
Raurāci, -ōrum: Rauraci, 1
reditiō, -ōnis f.: return, going back, 1
rīpa, -ae f.: bank, shore, 1
socius, -ī m.: comrade, ally, companion, 2
subeō, -īre, -ī, -itum: approach, undergo, 1
tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum: destroy, raise, 2
trans; over, across (+ acc.), 3
Tulingī, -ōrum m.: Tulingi, 1
ubi: where, when, 4
vadum, -ī n.: shallow, shoal, ford, 2
vel: or, **vel...vel,** either...or, 2
vīcus, -ī m.: village, neighborhood, district, 2
vīs, vīs, f., pl. virēs: force, power, violence, 4
vix: with difficulty, with effort, scarcely, 2

-
- 1 **eius:** *his*; i.e. Orgetorix, gen. sg.
nihilō minus: *no less*; “less by nothing,” comp. adverb; nihilō is abl. degree of difference
id quod: *that which*; id is object of *facere*
2 **ut...exeant:** (*namely*) *that...*; pres. subj. *exeō*, in a noun purpose clause in apposition to *id*
ad eam rem: *for this matter*; expresses purpose
sē: *that they*; acc. subject of *parātōs esse*
3 **arbitrātī sunt:** pf. deponent
numerō: *in number*; abl. of respect
ad: *around*; “up to” or “nearly”
5 **praeter quod:** *except (that) which...*
sēcum: *cum sē*
portātūrī erant: *were going to carry*; periphrastic fut. (fut. act. pple + impf. sum)
ut...essent: *so that...*; result, impf. sum
spē sublātā: *with hope having been carried off*; abl. absolute, pf. pass. pple from *tollō*
6 **ad...subeunda:** *for approaching...*; “for all dangers going to be approached,” a gerundive *subeō* + ad expresses purpose and is best translated through a gerund-gerundive flip as a gerund + object: “for approaching all dangers”
molīta: *ground*; i.e. flour, PPP “set in motion”
8 **ūtī...proficiscantur:** *that...*; an alternative spelling for *ut* (note: the pres. inf. for *ūtōr* is *ūtī* with an initial long-u); introducing an ind. command with pres. subj.
ūsī: *having employed*; nom. pl. PPP, deponent
ūtōr governs an ablative object
ūnā: *altogether*; adverb formed from an abl.
10 **trānsierant:** pluperfect of *trānseō*
sōciōs: (*as*) *allies*; in apposition to *Boiōsque*
12 **erant:** *there were*
itinera: *routes*
quibus...possent: *by which...*; rel. clause of characteristic; impf. subj. of *possum*, *quibus* is a relative adj. with *itineribus*, which is redundant and may be left untranslated
domō: *from home*; place from which
ūnum: *one (route)*; in apposition to *itinerā*
14 **quā:** *by which (way)*; or “where,” abl. as adv.
quā...dūcerentur: *by which...*; relative of characteristic with impf. subjunctive, the path is so narrow that carts must pass one at a time
15 **ut...possent:** *so that*; result clause, impf. subj.
facile: *easily*; irregular 3rd decl. adv. *facilis*, -e
alterum (iter): *the other (route)*; in apposition to *itinerā* (line 12) and parallel to “ūnum”
16 **multō:** *much*; lit. “by much”, abl. degree of difference modifies comparative adjectives
facilius atque expeditius: comparative adjs., neuter singular modifying “alterum (iter)”
propterea quod: *because*; 3rd instance so far
18 **vadō:** *in the shallows*; “in a ford”; place where
20 **sēsē...persuāsūrōs (esse)...coactūrōs (esse):** *that they would persuade or compel*; fut. inf.
21 **bonō animō:** *seemed not yet of good will to...*; abl. of quality in the predicative position
22 **vī:** irregular ablative of means, *vīs*
paterentur: *they (Allobrogēs) allow*; impf. subj. of the deponent *patior* (3rd-io)
23 **diem dīcunt quā diē:** *they name the day on which (day)...*; ablative time when
24 **a(nte) d(iem) V. Kal(ends) Apr(ilis):** *5th day before the Kalends of April*; March 28th, 58
L. Pīsōne...cōsulibus: abl. abs; add “being”

7.1 Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset, eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere 1
cōnārī, mātūrat ab urbe proficīscī et quam maximīs potest itineribus in
Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et ad Genavam pervenit. 2. Prōvinciae tōtī
quam maximum potest mīlitum numerum imperat (erat omnīnō in Galliā
ulteriōre legiō ūna), pontem, quī erat ad Genavam, iubet rescindī. 5

3. Ubi dē eius adventū Helvētīī certiōrēs factī sunt, legātōs ad eum mittunt
nobilissimōs civitātis, cuius legātīōnis Nammeius et Verucloetius principem
locum obtinēbant, quī dīcerent sibi esse in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter per
prōvinciam facere, proptereā quod aliud iter habērent nūllum: rogāre ut eius
voluntāte id sibi facere liceat. Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat L. Cassium 10
consulem occīsum exercitumque eius ab Helvētīīs pulsum et sub iugum
missum, cōncēdendum nōn putābat; 4. neque hōminēs inimicō animō, datā
facultāte per provinciam itineris faciendī, temperātūrōs ab iniūriā et
maleficiō existimābat. 5. Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset dum mīlitēs
quōs imperāverat convenīrent, lēgātīs respondit diem se ad dēlīberandum 15
sūmptūrum: sī quid vellent, ad Id. April. reverterentur.

April, Aprilis m.: April, 2

Cassius, -ī m.: Cassius, 1

concēdō, -ere; go away, withdraw, yield, 2

cōnsul, -is m.: consul, 3

contendō, -ere, -ī, -ntus: strive; hasten, 4

dēlīberō (1): consider, consult, weigh, 1

Genava, -ae f.: Geneva, 3

impetrō (1): to obtain, accomplish, 3

inimīcus, -a, -um: hostile, unfriendly, 4

iniūria, -ae f.: wrong, insult, injustice, 4

intercēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum: come or go
between, intervene, 1

Idūs, -uum f.: Ides (day of the month), 1

iugum, -ī n.: yoke, (mountain) range, 2

L.: Lucius, 2

lēgātio, -ōnis f.: embassy, envoy, 2

maleficiū, -ī n.: wrongdoing, crime, 2

matūrō (1): hasten; anticipate, ripen, 1

memoria, -ae f.: memory, 4

Nammeius, -ī m.: Nammeius, 1

nōbilis, -e: noble, renowned, 3

nuntiō (1): announce, report, 2

occīdō, -ere, occīdī, occīsus: kill, cut down 4

omnīnō: altogether, wholly, entirely, 2

pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus: drive, push, 2

pons, pontis m.: a bridge, 2

princeps, -cipis m./f.: chief, leader, 4

proptereā: on this account, therefore, 4

putō (1): to think, imagine, 3

rescindō, -ere, scidī, scissum: cut back, 1

respondeō, -ēre, -dī, -ōnsum: to answer, 3

revertor, -ī, reversus sum: to turn back, return, 2

rogō (1): to ask; tell, 2

spatium, -ī n.: space, room, extent, 4

sūmō, -ere, sumpsī, sumptum: take, spend, 1

temperō (1): refrain from, keep from, 1

ubi: where, when, 4

ulterior, -ius: farther, 2

urbs, urbis, f.: city, 1

Verucloētius, ī m.: Verucloetius, 1

voluntās, -tātis f.: will, wish, choice, 2

Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Discourse

In indirect discourse, the verbs of subordinate clauses become subjunctive, while the main verbs become infinitives. These subjunctives often do not require a special translation. Simply translate the verb in the appropriate tense and identify the subjunctive as “subordinate clause in indirect discourse.”

quod imperium obtentūrus esset *because he was about to obtain the command* p. 6

quod...aliud iter habērent nūllum *because they had no other route* p. 10

- 1 **Caesarī**: *to Caesar*; Caesar talks about himself in the 3rd person; dat. sg. of *nūntiātum esset*
nūntiātum esset: plpf. pass. subjunctive in a temporal clause with *cum*, “after” or “when”
id...eōs...cōnārī: *this... (namely) that they attempt*; acc. subject and deponent inf. (indirect disc.) in apposition to *id*
- 2 **quam...itineribus**: *in as rapid marches as possible*; “with the greatest marches as it is possible,” *quam* + superlative is “as X as possible,” *potest* is impersonal: “it is possible”
- 3 **Gallia ulteriōrem**: *further Gaul*; i.e. the Province (Transalpine Gaul) in southern France
contendit: *hastens*
- 4 **Prōvinciae tōtī...imperat**: *ordered from the entire Province...*; dat. indirect object; *tōtī* is dat. sg. of *tōtus* (gen. *tōtūs*)
quam...numerum: *as great a number of soldiers possible*; “a greatest number of soldiers as it is able;” see line 2
- 4 **imperat...(et) pontem...iubet**: supply the missing conjunction “et;” asyndeton, which suggests that Caesar is quick and decisive
- 5 **ad Genavam**: *near Geneva*
rescindī: present passive infinitive
- 6 **eius**: *his*; i.e. Caesar’s
certiōrēs facti sunt: *were informed*; “were made more certain”, common idiom in Caesar, *certiōrēs* is a pred. nominative
- 7 **cuius legātiōnis**: *of which embassy*; rel. adj.
- 8 **quī dicerent**: *who would say...*; relative clause of purpose, impf. subj. *dīcō*, which one may translate as a regular purpose clause: “to say...”
sibi esse in animō: *that they had in mind*; + inf. “there is to them in mind,” dat. of possession
- 9 **propterea quod**: *because*; lit. “on this account because;” 4th and final instance of this phrase
habērent: *they had*; impf. subj., subordinate clauses within indirect discourse govern verbs in the subjunctive
rogāre ut...liceat: *they asked that it be allowed...*; historical inf. and ind. command
eius voluntāte: *with his permission*
- 10 **memoriā tenēbat**: *in memory*; abl. of means, a common idiom for “he recalled” or “he remembered”
L. Cassium...occīsum (esse), exercitumque ...pulsum (esse)...missum (esse): two separate instances of indirect discourses (two acc. subjects) governed by *tenēbat*, supply *esse* to form pf. passive infinitives
- 11 **occīsum (esse)**: *had been killed*; pf. pass. inf.
pulsum (esse): pf. pass. inf. *pellō*
sub iugum missum (esse): *had been sent under the yoke*; i.e. had been enslaved
- 12 **cōncēdendum nōn (esse sibi)**: *that he must not yield*; “that it is not going to be yielded by him,” a passive periphrastic (*gerundive* + form of *sum*) which expresses obligation or necessity, often with a dative of agent
hominēs...temperātūrōs (esse): *that people...would not refrain*; fut. inf. governed by *existimābat*
inimicō animō: *of hostile intent*; abl. of description modifying *hominēs*
datā facultāte: ablative absolute
- 13 **itineris faciendī**: *of making a journey*; “of a journey going to be made” *gerundive* modifies gen. *iter* which is better translated through a *gerundive-gerund flip*
ab inūriā...maleficiō: *from...*; abl. separation with *temperātūrōs (esse)*
- 14 **ut spatium...posset**: *so that...*; purpose clause with impf. subj.; *spatium* is subject
- 15 **sē...sūmptūrum (esse)**: *that he...*; indirect discourse, supply *esse* for the future inf.
ad dēliberandum: *for deliberating*; ad + *gerund* expressing purpose, which can also be translated as an infinitive: “to deliberate”
- 16 **quid**; *anything*; *aliquis, aliquid* is a common indefinite pronoun (anyone, anything), but *quis, quid* is commonly used as an indefinite (who → anyone; what → anything) after *sī, nisi, num, and nē*. The mnemonic for this construction is the jingle “After *sī, nisi, num, and nē*, all the *ali*’s go away” (in other words indefinite *aliquid* becomes just *quid*)
sī...vellent...reverterentur: *if they should wish, they could return...*; in direct disc. a future less vivid condition (*sī* pres. subj., pres. subj.) which are placed in impf. subjunctive in indirect discourse in secondary sequence
ad Id(ūs) April(is): *near the Ides of April*; the 13th of April, the Ides denotes the time of the month when there is a full moon; *Idūs* is 4th decl. acc. pl. and *Aprilis* is gen. sg.

Numbers of Helvetians Killed During Caesar’s Campaign

In I.29 Caesar claims that 368,000 Helvetians and allies left Helvetia (only 92,000 were able to bear arms) and 110,000 returned. Therefore, 258,000 either fled or perished at Caesar’s hand.

24.1 At barbarī, cōnsiliō Rōmānōrum cognitō, praemissō equitatū et 1
 ēssedariīs, quō plērumque genere in proeliīs ūtī consuērunt, reliquīs copiīs
 subsecūtī nostrōs nāvibus ēgredī prohibēbant. 2. Erat ob hās causās summa
 difficultās, quod navēs propter magnitudinem nisi in altō cōstituī nōn
 poterant, mīlitibus autem, ignōtīs locīs, impedītīs manibus, magnō et gravī 5
 onere armōrum oppressīs simul et dē nāvibus desiliendum et in fluctibus
 consistendum et cum hostibus erat pugnandum, 3. cum illī aut ex āridō aut
 paulum in aquam progressī omnibus membrīs expeditīs, nōtissimīs locīs,
 audacter tēla coicerent et equōs insuefactōs incitārent. 4. Quibus rēbus nostrī
 perterritī atque huius omnīnō generis pugnae imperītī, nōn eādē alacritāte 10
 ac studiō quō in pedestribus ūtī proeliīs consuerant utēbantur.

25.1 Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs longās, quārum et speciēs erat
 barbarīs inūsitatior et motus ad usum expeditior, paulum removērī ab
 onerāriīs nāvibus et rēmīs incitārī et ad latus apertum hostium constituī atque 15
 inde fundīs, sagittīs, tormentīs hostēs propellī ac submovērī iussit; quae rēs
 magnō usuī nostrīs fuit. 2. Nam et nāvium figurā et rēmōrum mōtū et
 inusitatō genere tormentōrum permōtī barbarī constitērunt ac paulum modo
 pedem rettulērunt.

alacritās, -tātis f.: eagerness, ardor, 1
aperiō, -īre, -uī, -ertus: open, disclose, 3
aqua, -ae f.: water, 1
aridus, -a, -um: dry, 3
audacter: boldly, 1
consistō, -ere, -stītī: to stand (still), stop 2
dēsiliō, -īre, -luī: to jump down, dismount, 4
difficultās, -tātis f.: trouble, difficulty, 1
equus, -ī m.: horse, 4
ēssedārius, -ī m.: charioteer, driver, 1
expeditus, -a, -um: unimpeded, fast, 4
figurā, -ae f.: form, shape, figure, 1
fluctus, -ūs m.: wave, billow, 2
funda, ae f.: sling, 3
ignōtus, -a, -um: unknown; obscure 1
imperītus, a, um: unskilled, inexperienced, 2
impeditus, -a, -um: hindered, impeded, 3
inde: from there, then, afterward, 3
insuefactus, -a, -um: accustomed, inured, 1
inūsitatō, -a, -um: unusual, uncommon, 1
latus, -eris n.: side, flank, 3
membrum, -ī n.: limb, member, 1
modo: only, merely, simply; just now, 4
mōtus, -ūs m.: motion, 3

nōtus, -a, -um: known, familiar, famous, 2
omnīnō: altogether, wholly, entirely, 2
onerārius, -a, -um: freight (ship); 2
onus, oneris n.: burden, load, freight, 1
opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum: burden,
 overwhelm, 3
pedester, -tris, -tre: on foot, infantry, 1
perterreō, -ēre, -terruī: terrify thoroughly, 1
praemittō, -ere: send forward, send ahead, 2
prōgredior, -gredi, -gressus: step forward,
 go forth, advance, 2
prōpellō, -ere, -pellī, -pulsum: drive forward
 or push away, 3
referō, ferre, tulī, lātum: report, bring back, 3
removeō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus: remove, 2
remus, ī m.: oar, 2
sagitta, -ae f.: arrow, 1
simul: at the same time (as); together, 4
speciēs, -ēi f.: sight, appearance, aspect, 1
studium, -ī n.: zeal, enthusiasm, pursuit, 3
submoveō, -ēre, -mōvī: move up; remove, 1
tormentum, -ī n.: missile-launcher, 3
ubi: where, when, 4

- 1 **cōnsiliō...cognitō**: abl. absolute
praemissō...ēssedariīs: abl. absolute with two nouns; mobile troops were sent in advance
- 2 **quō...genere**: *which kind (of warfare)*; abl. obj. of *ūtī*, the deponent complementary inf. of *ūtōr*
- 3 **cōnsu(ev)ērunt**: *were accustomed*; 3p pf.
reliquīs copiīs subsecūtī: *having followed behind with the rest of the troops*; dep. pf. pple modifies *barbarī*, the cavalry went in advance and the foot-soldiers followed
- 3 **navibus**: *from...*; abl. of place from which
ēgredi: *from disembarking*; “to step out,” dep. inf. *ēgredior*
- 4 **nisi in altō**: *except in the deep*; the Roman ships did not have flattened keels to come closer to the shore
cōstituī: *to be stopped*; pass. inf. with poterant
- 5 **militibus...oppressīs**: *the soldiers having been overcome...*; dat. of agent of pass. periphrastic, the dat. of agent is better translated as a subject intervening words are ablative of cause/means
gravī: i-stem abl. sing. modifies *onere*
- 6 **et desiliendum (erat)...et consistendum (erat)...et pugnandum (erat)**: (*both*) *the soldiers had to...and had to...and had to...*; “it was going to be jumped down by soldiers...” passive periphrastic (gerundive + sum) with a dat. of agent expressing obligation or necessity; it is better translated in the active with the verb “must” or, as here, “had to” (see pg. 21)
- 7 **cum...coicerent...incitārent**: *when...*; temporal cum-clause with impf. subjunctive
- 8 **paulum**: *a little*; inner acc. or acc. of extent
- prōgressī**: *having advanced*; pf. pple deponent
- omnibus...expeditīs**: abl. absolute
- nōtissimīs locīs**: abl. absolute, supply “being”
- 9 **īnsuēfactōs**: *experienced*; ‘accustomed’
quibus rēbus: *by these matters*; “by which things,” abl. means or cause; Caesar often uses relative pronoun for transition where English employs a demonstrative
- nostrī**: *our (men)*; as often
- 10 **huius generis pugnae**: gen. governed by the adjective *imperitī*, “unskilled in”
eādem...studiō: abl. objects of *ūtēbantur*
- 11 **quō...consuerant**: *which...*; *quō* is an abl. object of the inf. *ūtī*
proeliīs: *in battles*
- 12 **quod**: *this*; “which,” acc. obj. of *animadvertit*
nāvēs longās...constituī: acc. subj. and pass. infinitives governed by *iussit* below
- 13 **barbarīs**: *to the barbarians*; dat. of reference
inūsitātior: nom. sg. comparative adj.
- 14 **paulum**: *a little*; inner acc. or acc. of extent
removērī: pres. pass. inf.
cōstituī: *to be stopped*; pass. inf.
- 15 **propellī, submovērī**: pass. infinitives, *hostēs* is acc. subject
- 16 **magnō ūsuī nostrīs fuit**: *served a great use to our men*; “was for a great use for our men,” double dative construction (*ūsū* is dat. of purpose, *nostrīs* is dat. of interest)
- 17 **paulum modo**: *just a little*; *modo* is adverbial, *paulum* is acc. of extent
- 18 **pedem**: *their step(s)*; i.e. they retreated
rettulērunt: 3rd pl. pf. referō

Background to Caesar’s First Invasion of Britain on August 26, 55 BC

In IV.20 Caesar says that, although the winters were early (*matūrae*) in the north, he decided to go to Britain because he realized that assistance had been supplied from there (*inde subministrāta auxilia*) for the Gauls in almost every battle. Since Caesar knew very little about the region—its size (*magnitūdō*), inhabitants (*quantae nātiōnēs*), its practices in war (*ūsū bellī*), or its suitable ports (*idōneī portūs*)—he sent Gaius Volusenus in IV.21 as a scout to gather this information.

In the meantime, several states (*civitātēs*) of the Britons learned about his plan, sought out Caesar, and offered hostages as a show of loyalty. Caesar sent Commius, a loyal Gaul whom Caesar had placed as leader of the Atrebates and who had clout (*auctoritās*) over Gauls, back with the Britons. On the fifth day, Volusenus returned and reported what he had seen. In IV.22 after accepting hostages from the Gauls, Caesar placed the legates Q. Titurius Sabinus and L. Aurunculeius Cotta in charge of Roman forces in Gaul. Then he departed with 2 legions and about 80 transport ships.

In IV.23 Caesar set sail after midnight (*tertiā ferē vigiliā*) and around 10 a.m. (*hōrā diēi quārtā*) arrived in Britain. The Romans found themselves facing the sheer cliffs of Dover, and on top of all of the hills armed troops (*copiās armātās*) openly stood. Caesar now informed his legates about what Volusenus reported and sailed 7 miles up the coast to an open beach (*apertō ac plānō litore*).

25.3 Atque nostrīs mīlitibus cunctantibus, maximē propter altitudinem 1
maris, quī X legiōnis aquilam ferēbat, contestātus deōs ut ea rēs legiōnī
feliciter ēvenīret, ‘Dēsilitē,’ inquit, ‘militēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus
prōdere; ego certē meum rēi pūblicaē atque imperātōrī officium praestiterō.’

4. Hoc cum vōce magnā dīxisset, sē ex nāvī prōiēcit atque in hostēs aquilam 5
ferre coepit. 5. Tum nostrī cohortātī inter sē, nē tantum dēdecus
admitterētur, universī ex nāvī dēsiluērunt. 6. Hōs item ex proximīs primī
nāvibus cum conspēxissent, subsecutī hostibus appropinquāverunt.

26.1 Pugnātum est ab utrīsque ācriter. Nostrī tamen, quod neque ordinēs 10
servāre neque firmiter insistere neque signa subsequī poterant atque alius
aliā ex nāvī quibuscumque signīs occurrerat sē aggregābat, magnopere
perturbābantur; 2. hostēs vērō, nōtis omnibus vadīs, ubi ex lītore aliquōs
singulārēs ex nāvī ēgredientēs conspēxerant, incitātīs equīs impeditōs
adoriēbantur, 3. plūrēs paucōs circumstībant, aliī ab latere apertō in
universōs tēla coniciēbant. 15

4. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphās longārum nāvium, item
speculātōria navigia mīlitibus complērī iussit et, quōs laborantēs conspēxerat,
hīs subsidia submittēbat. 5. Nostrī, simul in āridō constitērunt, suīs omnibus
consecūtīs, in hostēs impetum fecērunt atque eōs in fūgam dedērunt; neque
longius prosequī potuērunt, quod equitēs cursum tenēre atque insulam capere 20
non potuerant. Hoc ūnum ad pristīnam fortūnam Caesarī defuit.

acriter: sharply, fiercely, 2

admittō, -ere, mīsī, missum: admit, allow, 2

adorior, -īrī, -ortus sum: rise up, attack, 2

aggregō (1): to crowd together, collect, 1

altitudō, -inis f.: height, depth, altitude, 2

aperiō, -īre, -uī, -ertus: open, disclose, 3

appropinquō (1): approach, draw near, 3

aquila, -ae f.: eagle, eagle standard, 4

aridus, -a, -um: dry, 3

circumstībō, -ere, -stēfī: to surround, 2

cohortor, -ārī, cohortātum: urge on, incite 3

consequor, -ī, secūtus: follow after; pursue 1

conspiciō, -ere, spexī, spectus: see, behold 5

contestor, -ārī, -ātum: to call to witness, 1

cunctor, -ārī, -ātum: to delay, hesitate 1

cursum, -ūs m.: course, running, haste, 3

dēdecus, -oris n.: dishonor, disgrace, shame, 1

dēsiliō, -īre, -luī: to jump down, dismount, 4

deus, -ī m.: god, divinity, deity, 4

ego: I, 2

equus, -ī m.: horse, 4

ēvenīō, -īre, -īī, -itum: come or turn out, 1

fēliciter: happily, favorably, 1

firmiter: firmly, steadfastly, 1

fortūna, -ae f.: fortune, chance, luck, 4

fuga, -ae f.: flight, haste, exile, speed, 3

impeditus, -a, -um: hindered, impeded, 3

imperātor, -oris m.: commander, leader, 2

inquam: say, 4

insistō, -ere, -stīfī: set on, set about; stop, 2

insula, -ae, f.: island, 2

item: also, likewise, in like manner, 3

labōrō (1): work, toil, labor, strive, 2

latus, -eris n.: side, flank, 2

litus, litoris n.: coast, shore, beach, 1

magnōpere: greatly, very much, 2

mare, -is n.: sea, 1

meus, -a, -um: my, mine, 1

nāvīgium, -ī n.: vessel, sail, 1

nōtus, -a, -um: known, familiar, famous, 2

occurrō, -ere: run to meet, attack, 2

officium, -īī, n.: duty, obligation, 3

paucī, -ae, -a: little, few, scanty, 4

plūs (plūris): more, 4

pristinus, -a, -um: former, previous, earlier 2

prōdō, ere, didī, dītum: bring forth; betray 2

proiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum: throw

forward, project, 2

prosequor, sequi, secutum: follow, pursue 1
quicumque, quae-, quod-: whosoever, 4
scapha, -ae f.: skiff, small boat, 1
servo (1): save, keep, preserve, 2
simul: at the same time (as); together, 4
singularis, -e: single, 2
speculātorius, -a, um: of a look-out/scout, 1

submittō, -ere, -misi: send up, 1
ubi: where, when, 4
universus, -a, -um: all together, whole, 3
vadum, -i n.: shallow, shoal, ford, 2
vērō: in truth, truly, in fact, to be sure, 3
vōx, vōcis, f.: voice; utterance, word, 4

- 1 **nostris...cunctantibus:** abl. abs., pres. pple
 2 **quī...ferēbat:** (*the one*) who...; i.e. the standard bearer, subject of inquit
contestātus...ut: *having implored the gods... that...;* ut + impf. subjunctive in ind. command
 3 **desilite:** plural imperative
militēs: vocative direct address
vultis: 2nd pl. pres. volō
aquilam: *the eagle (standard);* the golden eagle on the staff that represents the 10th legion. The behavior toward the military standard is similar to the loyalty shown to the American flag.
 4 **meum...officium praestiterō:** *I will have performed my duty to;* + dat. compound, fut. pf.
 5 **cum...dixisset:** *when he had...;* cum is an adverbial conjunction not a preposition
vōce magnā: *with...;* abl. of manner is often without “cum” when the object is modified by an adjective, here magnā
sē: *himself;* standard-bearer is the subject
ex navī: ablative, i-stem 3rd declension
 6 **ferre:** infinitive ferō
nostrī: *our (men);* nom. subject
conhortātī: pf. dep. pple cohortor
inter sē: *one another;* “among themselves”
ne...admitteretur: *that... not;* negative ind. command, impf. subj. in secondary sequence
 7 **Hōs..conspēxissent:** *when (the other soldiers) had caught sight of (them);* plpf. subjunctive
 8 **subsecutī:** *having followed behind;* pf dep pple
pugnātum est: *each (side) fought;* “it was fought,” impersonal pf. pass.
 9 **Nostrī:** *our (men)*
 10 **ordinēs servāre:** *to maintain their ranks*
subsequi: *to follow behind;* deponent inf.
alius aliā ex navī: *one from one ship...*
another from another ship; common meaning with two uses of alius, -a, -um
 11 **quibuscumque signīs:** dat. of compound verb
 12 **vērō:** *but indeed, but to be sure;* vērō is in an adversative clause; placed second in the sentence but first in English, it draws out a contrast between the Romans and the Britons
nōtis...vadīs: ablative abs.
 13 **egredientēs:** pres. act. pple
 14 **plūrēs paucōs:** *More (Britons)...few (Romans);* juxtaposition, which heightens the contrast; plūrēs is nom. subj. of plūs
aliī: (*and*) others...; asyndeton
 16 **quod:** *this;* “which,” acc. obj. animadvertisset
nāvium: i-stem gen. plural nāvis
 17 **complēri:** pass. infinitive
quōs laborantēs conspēxerat: *whom he had seen struggling;* “toiling,” against the enemy
 18 **hīs:** *to these;* dat. i.o. or dat. with compound
Nostrī: *Our (men)*
 19 **suīs omnibus:** *all their (fellow soldiers)...*; an abl. absolute with consecūtis
in: *against;* a common meaning in this context
in fūgam dedērunt: *put them into flight;* “in fūgam dō” is a common idiom in Caesar
 20 **longius:** *farther;* comparative adverb, longē
prosequi: pres. deponent complementary inf.
 21 **insulam capere:** *to land on the island;* “catch the island,” the horses had not disembarked yet because the ships were not close enough to the shore
ad pristīnam fortūnam: (*compared*) *to his previous good fortune;* “in proportion to...” suggests a comparison
 22 **Caesarī defuit:** *failed Caesar;* “was lacking to Caesar,” dat. of interest

Supine

A supine is a verbal noun formed by adding **-ū** in ablative and **-um** in accusative to the 4th principle part stem. It is often translated as an ablative of respect (specification) and accusative expressing purpose:

factū: *in doing (to do)* (p. 6, 20)

frumentātum: *to get grain* (p. 20)

oppugnātum: *to assault* (p. 39)

rogātum: *to ask* (p. 52)

nocitum: *to be harmed* (p. 52)

27.1 Hostēs proeliō superātī, simul atque sē ex fūgā recēpērunt, statim ad 1
 Caesarem lēgātōs dē pace mīsērunt; obsidēs datūrōs quaeque imperāset sēsē
 factūrōs pollicitī sunt. 2. Ūnā cum hīs legātīs Commius Atrēbās vēnit, quem
 suprā demonstrāveram ā Caesare in Britanniam praemisum. 3. Hunc illī ē
 nāvī ēgressum, cum ad eōs ōrātōris mōdō Caesaris mandāta deferret, 5
 comprehenderant atque in vincula coiēcērant; 4. tum proeliō factō
 remīsērunt. In petendā pace eius rēi culpam in multitūdinem coiēcērunt
 et propter imprudentiam ut ignōscerētur petivērunt.

5. Caesar questus quod, cum ultrō in continentem lēgātīs missīs pacem ab
 sē petissent, bellum sine causā intulissent, ignōscere <sē> imprudentiae dixit 10
 obsidēsque imperāvit; 6. quōrum illī partem statim dedērunt, partem ex
 longinquiōribus locīs arcessitam paucīs diēbus sēsē datūrōs dīxērunt. 7. Intereā
 suōs remigrāre in agrōs iussērunt, principēsque undique convenīre et sē
 civitātēsque suās Caesarī commendāre coepērunt.

28.1 Hīs rēbus pāce confirmātā, post diem quartum quam est in Britānniam 15
 ventum nāvēs XVIII, dē quibus suprā demonstrātum est, quae equitēs
 sustulerant, ex superiōre portū lēnī ventō solvērunt. 2. Quae cum
 appropinquārent Britānniae et ex castrīs vidērentur, tanta tempestās subitō
 coōrta est ut nūlla eārum cursum tenēre posset, sed aliae eōdem unde erant
 profectae referrentur, aliae ad inferiōrem partem insulae, quae est prōpius 20
 sōlis occāsū, magnō suī cum periculō deicerentur; 3. quae tamen, ancorīs
 iactīs, cum fluctibus complērentur, necessāriō adversā nocte in altum
 provectae continentem petiērunt.

adversus, -a, -um: opposite, in front, 2
ancora, -ae f.: anchor, 3
appropinquō (1): approach, draw near (dat.), 3
arcessō, -ere, -ivī, itum: summon, send for, 1
Atrebas, Atrēbātis, m.: Atreates, 3
coepī, coepisse, coeptum: to begin, 9
commendō (1): to commit, entrust, 1
Commius, -ī m.: Commius, 2
compleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum: fill up, fill, 6
comprehendō, -ere, -dī: seize, arrest; grasp 4
continēns, continentis f.: the continent, mainland, 3
coōrior, -īrī, coōrtus: arise, break out, 2
culpa, -ae f.: blame, fault; cause, 1
cursum, -ūs m.: course, running, haste, 3
dēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum: cast down 2
fluctus, -ūs m.: wave, billow, 2
fuga, -ae f.: flight, haste, exile, speed, 3
iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum: to throw, 4
ignoscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtum: pardon, forgive 2
imprudētia, -ae, f.: lack of foresight, 2
inferus, -a, -um: below, lower, 3

insula, -ae, f.: island, 2
intereā: meanwhile, meantime, 3
lenis, -e: smooth, slippery, 1
longinquus, -a, -um; far, distant, remote, 2
mandō (1): order, command, commit, 2
modus, ī n.: manner, form; measure, 4
necessārius, -a, -um: necessary, inevitable, 1
occāsus, -ūs m.: fall, destruction, 2
ōrātor, -ōris, m.: speaker, pleader, 1
paucī, -ae, -a: little, few, scanty, 4
polliceor, -cērī, -citus: promise, offer, 2
portus, -ūs m.: harbor, port, haven, 1
praemittō, -ere: send forward, send ahead, 2
princeps, -cipis m./f.: chief, leader, 4
proprius: more closely, nearer, 3
prōvehō, -ere, -vexī, vectum: carry forth, 1
quartus, -a, -um: the fourth, 2
queror, querī, questum: complain, lament, 1
referō, ferre, tulī, lātum: report, bring back, 3
remigrō (1): to travel back, wander back, 1
remittō, -ere, -misi: send back, let go, relax, 4

simul: at the same time (as); together, 4
sōl, sōlis m.: sun, 3
solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtum: loosen, set sail; pay, 1
statim: immediately, at once, 4
sufferō, -ere, sustulī: carry or hold up, bear 3
suprā: above, over, on the top, 3

tempestās, tempestātis f.: storm, 3
ultrō: voluntarily; moreover, beyond, 3
unde: whence, from which source, 3
ventus, ventī m.: wind, 3
vinculum, -ī n.: bond, chain, 2

-
- 1 **proeliō:** *in battle*; abl of respect or place where
simul atque: *as soon as...*
sē...recēpērunt: *they recovered*; “retreated”
- 2 **dē:** *about*
obsidēs: acc. d.o. of datūrōs (esse)
sēsē: *that they would*; reflexive as acc. subject of fut. infinitives datūrōs (esse) and factūrōs (esse) in secondary sequence
quaeque imperāsset: *and (the things) which he had ordered*; imperā(vi)sset is a syncopated plpf. subj. in a relative clause of characteristic, the missing antecedent is obj. of factūrōs (esse)
pollicitī sunt: perfect deponent polliceor
ūnā: *altogether, together*; ablative as adverb
- 3 **quem:** *whom...*; acc. subject of pf. passive inf. praemissum (esse) in ind. discourse with by demonstrāveram
- 4 **suprā demonstrāveram:** *I had shown above*; i.e. earlier in the narrative
illī: *those (Britons)*; subject of comprehenderant
- 5 **orātōris mōdō:** *in the manner of a public speaker*; ablative of manner
- 6 **mandāta:** *the orders*; “things ordered” acc. d.o.
deferret: *Commius carried*; impf. subj. deferō
coīcerant: plpf. co(n)iciō, -ere
proeliō factō: abl. absolute
- 7 **in petendā pace:** *in seeking peace*; “in peace going to be sought,” gerund-gerundive flip in which *pace* becomes acc. obj. of the gerund
eius rēi: *for this matter*; gen. of charge
coīcerunt: pf. co(n)iciō, -ere
- 8 **ut ignōscerētur:** impf. subj., ind. command
- 9 **questus quod:** *having complained that...had waged*; intulisset is plpf. subj. for alleged cause
cum: *after*
in continentem: *to the continent*; i.e. continent of Europe, governed by missīs
petissent: they had sought; plpf. subjunctive
ab sē: *from him*; i.e. from Caesar, reflexive
- 8 **intulissent:** plpf. subj. inferō, alleged cause
- 10 **ignōscere <sē>:** *that he pardons*; + dat. obj.
- 11 **quōrum...partem...partem:** *part of which...(another) part...*; partitive gen.
- 12 **arcessitam:** *summoned*; modifies partem
- paucīs diēbus:** *within...*; abl. time within
sēsē: *that they...*; emphatic reflexive, acc. subject of fut. inf. datūrōs (esse) in indirect discourse
- 13 **suōs:** *their own (men)*; object of iussērunt
in agrōs: *to their fields, to their farms*
- 15 **His rēbus:** abl. of means of cause
Pāce confirmātā: abl. absolute
post diēm quartum quam...ventum *during the fourth day after they came to Britain*; “the fourth day later than it was come into Britain,” postquam as one word can be translated “after;” ventum est is an impersonal pf. passive which we translate in the active **nāvēs XVIII:** subject of solvērunt
- 16 **suprā demonstrātum est:** *it has been revealed above*; i.e. earlier in the narrative
quae..sustulerant: *which had brought...*; modifies fem. pl. nāvēs, plpf. sufferō
- 17 **ex superiōre portū:** *from the upper harbor*
lēnī: abl. sg. i-stem 3rd decl. adj. with ventō, the wind was not strong, so the ships holding the cavalry arrived later than the ships that had already come ashore
solvērunt: *set sail*; “loosened”
quae cum: *when these (ships)...*; “when which (ships),” we prefer a demonstrative here where Caesar uses a relative pronoun
Britānniae: *to Britain*; dat. of compound verb
- 19 **coōrta est:** deponent perfect, coōrior
ut...posset: *that...was able*; result clause
nūlla eārum: the antecedents of the adj. and pronoun are the nāvēs (feminine, plural)
aliae...aliae: *some (ships)...others*
eōdem: *to the same place*; adverb
erant profectae: plpf. deponent proficīscor
- 20 **proprius:** *nearer to* + acc.
- 21 **magnō suī periculō:** *with great risk for them*
quae tamen: *these (ships) however*; “which”
- 22 **cum...complerētur:** *when...*; cum is adverbial not a preposition; flūctibus is abl. means
necessāriō: *necessarily*; abl. as adverb
adversā nocte: *in the face of the coming night*
- 24 **profectae:** PPP prōvehō

29.1 Eādem nocte accidit ut esset luna plēna, quī diēs maritimōs aestūs 1
 maximōs in Ōceanō efficere consuēvit, nostrīsque id erat incognītum. 2. Ita
 ūnō tempore et longās nāvēs, quibus Caesar exercitum transportandum
 curāverat, quāsque in aridum subdūxerat, aestus complēverat, et onerāriās,
 quae ad ancorās erant deligātae, tempestās afflictabat, neque ūlla nostrīs 5
 facultās aut administrandī aut auxiliandī dabātur.

3. Complūribus nāvibus fractīs, reliquae cum essent fūnibus, ancorīs
 reliquīsque armamentīs amissīs ad navigandum inūtilēs, magna, id quod
 necesse erat accidere, tōtīus exercitūs perturbātio facta est. 4. Neque enim
 nāvēs erant aliae quibus reportārī possent, et omnia dēerant quae ad 10
 reficiendās nāvēs erant usuī, et, quod omnibus constābat hiemārī in Galliā
 oportere, frumentum in hīs lōcīs in hiemem provīsum nōn erat.

30.1 Quibus rēbus cognītīs, principēs Britānniae, quī post proelium ad
 Caesarem convēnerant, inter sē collocutī, cum equitēs et nāvēs et
 frumentum Rōmānīs dēesse intellegerent et paucitātem mīlitum ex 15
 castrōrum exiguitāte cognōscerent, quae hōc erant etiam angustiora quod sine
 impedimentīs Caesar legiōnēs transportāverat.

afflictō (1): agitate, knock about, 1
administrō (1): to manage, direct; help, 3
aestus, -ūs f.: tide, swell; heat, 2
āmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum: lose, let go, 2
ancora, -ae f.: anchor, 3
angustus, -a, -um: narrow, confined, 4
aridus, -a, -um: dry, 3
armamentum, -ī m.: equipment, tackle, 1
auxilior, -ārī: to help, assist, support, 1
clam: secretly, in secret, 1s
coepī, coepisse, coeptum: to begin, 9
colloquor, -quī, -locūtum: to converse, 4
compleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum: fill up, fill, 6
confidō, -ere, confisus sum: trust, believe, rely upon, 4
coniūratiō, -ōnis f.: pact, union, conspiracy 3
constō, -āre, -stitī: stand fixed; is agreed, 2
cūrō (1): care for, attend to, manage, 1
dēducō, -ere: to lead or draw down or away, 3
dēligō (1): to tie down, fasten, 2
enim: for, indeed, in truth, 3
exiguitās, -tātis, f.: smallness, tininess, 1
frangō, -ere, frēgī, fractus: break, 1
fūnis, -is m.: a rope, cord
hiemo (1): spend the winter, pass the winter, 3
hiems, hiemis f.: winter, storm, 4
incognitus, -a, -um: unknown, unexamined, 1
intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum: to understand, 2
intercludō, -ere, -clūsī, clūsum: close off, 1

inūtilis, -e: useless, unprofitable, 1
lūna, -ae f.: moon, 1
maritimus, -a, -um: maritime, marine, 1
nāvīgō (1): to sail, 2
necesse: necessary; (it is) necessary, 4
nēmō, nūllius, nēmīnī, -em, nūllō: no one, 3
Oceānus, ī m.: Oceanus, 3
onerārius, -a, -um: transport ship; 2
oportet: it is proper, fitting, necessary, 2
optimus, -a, -um: best, noblest, finest, 1
paucitās, -tātis f. (1): fewness, scarcity, 3
paulātīm: gradually, little by little, 3
perturbātiō, -tiōnis f.: confusion, disorder, 1
plēnus, -a, -um: full, full of, 1
postea: thereafter, afterwards, 1
princeps, -cipis m./f.: chief, leader, 4
prōducō, -ere, -dūxī, ductum: lead forward 2
prōvideō, -ere, -vidī, -visum: to foresee, take
 precautions, prepare for 3
rebellio, -lliōnis f.: revolt, renewal of war, 1
reditus, -ūs m.: a return, a coming back, 1
reficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum: restore, repair, 2
reportō (1): to carry back, 1
rursus: again, backward, back, 4
subducō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus: draw up., 2
tempestās, tempestātis f.: storm, 3
transportō (1): carry over, take across, 3

- 1 **Eādem nocte** *on...*; abl. of time when
accidit ut: *it happened that...*; noun result
 clause commonly follows impersonal *accidit*
esset: *there was*; impf. subj. sum
quī diēs: *which time...*; “which day,” rel. adj.
aestūs maximōs: calculated to be August 30,
 55 BC thus dating the entire expedition
- 2 **nostrīs**: *to our (men)*; dat. of interest
- 3 **ūnō tempore**: abl. of time when
et longās nāvēs....et onerāriās (nāvēs): *both
 the long ships and the freight (ships)*
quibus: abl. of means, relative pronoun
transportandum (esse): *that...was to be
 transported*; “was going to be transported”
 passive periphrastic (gerundive + missing inf.
 of sum) express obligation or necessity;
exercitum is acc. subject of this infinitive in
 indirect discourse
- 4 **subdūxerat**: *drew up*; as a prefix sub- often
 means “up from under” or just “up”
- 5 **nostrīs**: *to our (men)*; dat. of indirect object
- 6 **administrandī aut auxiliandī**: gen. sg.
 gerunds (verbal nouns), translate in English
 with -ing, modifying the subject *facultās*
- 7 **complūribus...fractīs**: abl. absolute
reliquae cum essent...inūtilēs: *since the
 remaining (ships) were...*; causal; impf. subj.
- 8 **ad navigandum**: *for...*; ad + gerund expresses
 purpose, here qualifying *inūtilēs*
- 7 **magna**: modifies fem. sg. *perturbātiō* below
id quod: *that which...*; apposition to *perturbātiō*
- 9 **tōtius exercitūs**: subjective gen. sg.
- 10 **possent**: *they might be able*; impf. subj. in a
 relative clause of purpose
dēerant: impf. dēsum
ad reficiendās nāvēs: *for repairing...*; ad +
 noun + gerundive expressing purpose; employ
 a gerund-gerundive flip in the translation
- 11 **erant usuī**: *were of use*; dative of purpose
constābat: *it was agreed to all to...*; “stood
 fixed” + *oportere*, Caesar had planned to
 spend the winter in Gaul, so he brought
 insufficient amount of grain to Britain
- 12 **in hiemem**: *(well) into the winter*
- 13 **quibus rēbus**: *these things...*; abl. abs.
inter sē: *to one another*; “among themselves”
Rōmānīs dēesse: *were falling short for the
 Romans*; dat. of interest, inf. dēsum
- 16 **quae...erant angustiora**: *which was...*;
 neut. pl. *castra* is the antecedent
hōc...quod: *because of this...(namely)
 because,*” abl. of cause

Popular Uses of Subjunctive in Caesar

Practical Note: identify and translate most subjunctives in the tense you find them.

| | How to identify | special translation | example |
|---|---|---------------------|--|
| 1. Purpose, adverbial or relative | <i>ut/nē</i> (neg.) | may/might | <i>ut Caesar mitteret so that Caesar might send</i> |
| 2. Result, adverbial or noun clause | <i>ut/ut nōn</i> (neg.) | none | <i>ut Caesar mitteret that Caesar sent</i> |
| 3. Cum-Clauses | <i>Cum</i> + subjunctive | none | <i>Cum Caesar mitteret When Caesar sent</i> |
| 4. Indirect Question | interrogatives: e.g. <i>quis, cūr</i> | none | <i>nōvit quōs Caesar mitteret he learned whom Caesar sent</i> |
| 5. Indirect Command | commanding verb + <i>ut/nē</i> (neg.) | none | <i>persuāsit ut Caesar mitteret he persuaded that Caesar send</i> |
| 6. Relative Clause of Characteristic | <i>quī, quod</i> + subj. | none/would | <i>quōs Caesar mitteret the sort whom Caesar would send</i> |
| 7. Verb in Subordinate Clause in Ind. Disc. | any subordinate verb in an acc. + inf. construction | none | <i>eōs, sī id mitteret, lēgere that they read it, if he sent it</i> |
| 8. Future-Less-Vivid | <i>sī</i> pres. subj., pres. subj. | should/would | <i>sī sit, mittat if he should be...he would send</i> |
| 9. Pres. Contrafactual | <i>sī</i> impf. subj., impf. subj. | were/would | <i>sī esset, mitteret if he were...he would send</i> |
| 10. Past Contrafactual | <i>sī</i> plpf. subj., plpf. subj. | had/would have | <i>sī fuisset, mīssisset if he had been...he would have</i> |

30.2. optimum factū esse dūxērunt rebellione factā frūmentō commeātūque 1
nostrōs prohibēre et rem in hiemem producere, quod eīs superātis aut reditū
interclusīs nēminem postea bellī inferendī causā in Britanniam transitūrum
cōnfidēbant. 3. Itaque rursus coniurātiōne factā paulātim ex castrīs discedere
et suōs clam ex agrīs dēducere coepērunt. 5

31.1 At Caesar, etsī nōndum eōrum cōnsilia cognōverat, tamen et ex
ēventū nāvium suārum et ex eō quod obsidēs dare intermiserant fore id quod
accidit suspiciābātur. 2. Itaque ad omnēs casūs subsidia comparābat. Nam et
frūmentum ex agrīs cotidiē in castra cōnferēbat et, quae gravissimē afflictae
erant nāvēs, eārum materiā atque aere ad reliquās reficiendās ūtēbātur et quae 10
ad eās rēs erant usuī ex continentī comportārī iubēbat. 3. Itaque, cum summō
studiō ā mīlitibus administrāretur, XII nāvibus āmissīs, reliquīs ut navigārī
satis commodē posset effēcit.

32.1 Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex consuetūdine ūnā frumentātum missā,
quae appellābātur VII., neque ūllā ad id tempus bellī suspiciōne interpōsitā, 15
cum pars hominum in agrīs remanēret, pars etiam in castra ventitāret, eī quī
prō portīs castrōrum in statiōne erant Caesarī nuntiāvērunt pulverem
maiōrem quam consuetūdō ferret in eā parte vidērī quam in partem legiō iter
fēcisset.

afflictō (1): damage, agitate, knock about, 1
administrō (1): to manage, direct; help, 3
aes, aeris n.: bronze, copper, 2
āmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum: lose, let go, 2
clam: secretly, in secret, 1
coepī, coepisse, coeptum: to begin, 9
commeātus, -ūs m.: convoy, traffic, trip, 1
commodus, -a, -um: convenient, suitable, 2
comparō (1): prepare, get ready, provide, 4
comportō (1): carry together, collect, 3
cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum: bring together, gather, 2
confidō, -ere, confisus sum: trust, believe, rely upon, 4
coniurātiō, -ōnis f.: pact, union, conspiracy 3
conlocō (1): place, settle, arrange, 1
continēns, continentis f.: the continent, mainland, 3
cotidiē: daily, every day, 1
dēducō, -ere: lead or draw down or away, 3
ēventus, -ūs m.: outcome, consequence, result, 2
factū: to do (supine), 2
frūmentor, -ārī: to forage, fetch corn, 1
hiems, hiemis f.: winter, storm, 4
interclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, clūsum: close off, 1
interpōnō, -ere, -posuī: include, introduce, 2
materia, -ae f.: timber, wood, material, 2

nāvigō (1): to sail, 2
nēmō, nullūs, nēminī, -em, nullō: no one, 3
nondum: not yet, 3
nuntiō (1): announce, report, 2
optimus, -a, -um: best, noblest, finest, 1
paucitās, -tātis f. (1): fewness, scarcity, 3
paulātim: gradually, little by little, 3
porta, -ae f.: gate, entrance, 1
postea: thereafter, afterwards, 1
princeps, -cipis m./f.: chief, leader, 4
prōducō, -ere, -duxī, ductum: lead forth, 2
pulvis, pulveris m.: dust, dirt, 1
rebellio, -lliōnis f.: revolt, renewal of war, 1
reditus, -ūs m.: a return, a coming back, 1
reficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum: restore, repair, 2
remaneō, ēre, mansī, mansum: remain, 1
rursus: again, backward, back, 4
satis: enough, sufficient, 2
statio, statiōnis f.: post, station, anchorage, 3
studium, -ī n.: zeal, enthusiasm, pursuit, 3
suspicio, -ciōnis f.: mistrust, suspicion, 4
suspitor, -ārī, suspicātum: to suspect, 3
transportō (1): carry over, take across, 3
ventitō (1): to come often, resort to, 2

- 1 **optimum esse**: *that it was best*; ind. discourse, the subject is prohibēre and producere
factū: *in fact*; supine (verbal noun), abl. respect
dūxērunt: *they considered*; “they calculated”
rebelliōne factā: abl. absolute
frumentō commeātūque: *from...;* abl. of separation governed prohibēre
- 2 **nostrōs** *our (men)*
producere *to prolong, to draw out*
eīs...interclusīs: abl. absolute; eīs = hīs
reditū: *from a return*; abl. separation
- 3 **nēminem**: *no one*; acc. subject from nēmō
bellī inferendī causā: *for the sake of waging...;* causā behaves as a preposition with a preceding gen.; here a gerundive which we translate with the gerundive-gerund flip
transitūrum (esse): fut. inf. transeō with acc. subject nēminem
- 5 **suōs**: *their (men)*; i.e. the Britons, obj. of dēducere
- 6 **et...et**: *both...and*
- 7 **ex eō quod**: *from the fact that*; “from this (fact) because,” eō is a demonstrative
dare intermiserant: *had ceased to give...*
fore...accidit: *that it would be that which happened*; ind. discourse, fore is equivalent to futūrum esse, the fut. inf. of sum, governed by suspicābātur
- 8 **ad omnēs casūs**: *for...;* expressing purpose
et...et: *both...and*;
- 9 **quae...nāvēs, earum...aere**: *the timber and bronze of those (ships), which ships...;* the relative clause precedes the antecedent *eārum, materīa* atque *aere* are abl. object of impf. ūtor
- 10 **ad...reficiendās**: *for...;* ad + gerundive again expressing purpose, readers should employ the gerundive-gerund flip, and translate the verb form as a gerund with an acc. object
reliquās (nāvēs): *the rest (of the ships)*
- 11 **quae...usuī**: *the (things) which were of use...;* usuī is dative of purpose, cf. 29.4
ad eās rēs: *for...;* ad + acc expressing purpose
continentī: 3rd declension i-stem abl. sg.
- 12 **summō studiō**: abl. of manner with adjective does not require “cum;” this cum begins a causal cum-clause (since) with administrārētur
administrārētur: *it was managed*; impf. subj.
reliquīs ut...effēcit: *he brought it about that that the remaining ships were able to be sailed conveniently enough*; a noun result clause after effēcit, “brought it about”
- 14 **ex consuetūdine**: *according to custom*; abl. of source; the adj. ūnā modifies legiōne
frumentātum: *to get grain*; supine, acc. usually expresses purpose
- 15 **VII**: *the 7th (legion)*; predicate nominative
ūllā...suspiciōne interpōsitā: abl. absolute
- 16 **cum pars hominum...pars**: *while some of the men...(and) others...;* asyndeton
ventitāret: *kept coming*; impf. subj. with cum, frequentative form of veniō
eī quī...: *those who...*
- 17 **pulverem...vidērī**: *that...;* indirect discourse, pulverem is acc. subj.
pulverem maiōrem quam: *more dust than...;* comparative
- 18 **consuetūdo ferret**: *custom bore out*; i.e. usual impf. subj., verbs in subordinate clauses in indirect discourse are subjunctive
in eā parte: *in that direction*
quam in partem: *into which direction*; in quam partem
- 19 **fēcisset**: plpf. subj., relative cl. of characteristic

Gerundives

A gerundive, a future passive participle (stem + nd + 1st & 2nd decl. endings) agrees with a noun in case, number, and gender. Though it can be translated many ways: “going/about/worthy to be freed” or “to be freed,” we often employ a gerund-gerundive flip and translate it as a gerund:

| | | | |
|------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Genitive | <u>suī liberandī</u> | <i>for freeing themselves</i> | |
| | <u>bellī inferendī</u> | <i>for the sake of waging war</i> | gen. + causā expresses purpose |
| Accusative | <u>ad nāvēs reficiendās</u> | <i>for repairing ships</i> | ad + gerundive expresses purpose |
| Ablative | <u>in petendā pāce</u> | <i>in seeking peace</i> | |

Passive Periphrastic (gerundive + sum) expresses obligation or necessity and governs a dative of agent. Translate it with “must” or “has to” or “ought” in the present and “had to” in the past.

| | | |
|---------------------------------|---|-------------------|
| <u>faciendum</u> esset | <i>it had to be done</i> | in subjunctive |
| sibi iter <u>faciendum</u> esse | <i>that a journey must be made by him</i> | in ind. discourse |

32.2 Caesar id, quod erat, suspicātus, aliquid nōvī ā barbarīs inītum cōnsiliū, 1
cohortēs quae in statiōne erant sēcum in eam partem proficiscī, ex reliquīs
duās in statiōnem succēdere, reliquās armārī et confestim sēsē subsequī iussit.

3. Cum paulō longius ā castrīs processisset, suōs ab hostibus premī atque 5
aegrē sustinēre et, cōnfertā legiōne, ex omnibus partibus tēla coīcī
animadvertit. 4. Nam quod omnī ex reliquīs partibus demessō frūmentō pars
ūna erat reliqua, suspicātī hostēs hūc nostrōs esse ventūrōs noctū in silvīs
delituerant; 5. tum dispersōs depōsitīs armīs in metendō occupātōs subitō
adortī paucīs interfectīs reliquōs incertīs ordinibus perturbāverant, simul
equitātū atque ēssedīs circumdederant. 10

33.1 Genus hoc est ex ēssedīs pugnae. Prīmō per omnēs partēs perequitant
et tēla coīciunt atque ipsō terrōre equōrum et strepitū rotārum ordinēs
plērumque perturbant et, cum sē inter equitum turmās insinuāverunt, ex
ēssedīs dēsiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. 2. Aurigae interim paulātīm ex proeliō 15
excēdunt atque ita currūs conlocant ut, sī illī ā multitudine hostium
premantur, expeditū ad suōs receptum habeant. 3. Ita mobilitātem
equitum, stabilitātem peditum in proeliīs praestant, ac tantum ūsū
cotidiānō et exercitātiōne efficiunt utī in declivī ac praecipitī lōcō incitātōs
equōs sustinēre et brevī moderārī ac flectere et per temonem percurrere et in
iugō insistere et sē inde in currūs citissimē recipere consuerint. 20

adorior, -īrī, -ortus sum: rise up, attack, 2
aeger, -gra, -grum: sick, weary, 4
armō (1): to arm, 1
auriga, ae m.: charioteer, driver, 1
brevis, -e: short, 3
circumdō, -are, -dedī, -datus: surround, 1
citus, -a, -um: swift, quick, 1
confertus, a, um: crowded together, dense, 3
cōnfestim: immediately, 4
conlocō (1): place, settle, arrange, 1
cotidiānus, -a, -um: daily, of every day, 3
currus, -ūs m.: chariot, cart, 2
dēclivis, -e: sloping, inclined downwards, 1
dēlitescō, -ere, -tuī: conceal oneself, lie hid 1
dēmetō, -ere, messuī, messum: reap, mow 1
dēponō, -ere, -posuī, -positum: put down, 1
dēsiliō, -īre, -luī: to jump down, dismount, 4
dispergō, -ere, -spersī, spersum: scatter, 1
equus, -ī m.: horse, 4
ēssedum, -ī n.: war-chariot (Gallic word), 3
excēdō, -ere, cessī, -cessum: go out, 3
exercitatio, -iōnis f.: training, practice, 2
expeditus, -a, -um: unimpeded, fast, 4
flectō, -ere, flexī, flectum: turn, bend, 1
hūc: to this place, hither, here 2

incertus, -a, -um: unreliable, doubtful, 2
inde: from there, then, afterward, 3
ineō, -īre, ī, -itum: go into, enter, 1
insinuō (1): to insinuate, wind a way in, 1
insistō, -ere, -stīti: set on, set about; stop, 2
iugum, -ī n.: yoke, (mountain) range, 2
metō, ere, messuī, messum: reap, harvest, 1
mobilitās, -tātis f.: mobility, 1
moderor, -ārī, -ātum: restrain, regulate, 1
noctū: by night; abl. as adv. nox, noctis, 4
noscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtum: to learn, 1
occupō (1): seize, occupy, 4
paucī, -ae, -a: little, few, scanty, 4
paulātīm: little by little, gradually, 3
pedes, peditis m.: foot soldier, infantry; *adj.* on foot, 1
percurrō, -ere, -cucurrī: run through, 1
perequitō (1): to ride (a horse) through, 1
praiceps, praecipitis adj.: headlong; steep, 1
prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum: proceed, 3
proelior, -ārī: to give battle, fight, 1
rota, -ae f.: wheel, 1
silva, -ae f.: wood, forest, woodland, 4
simul: at the same time (as); together, 4
stabilitas, -tātis f.: stability, firmness, 1
statio, statiōnis f.: post, station, anchorage, 3

strepitus, -ūs m.: creaking, rustling, rushing, 1
succēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus: go up,
 approach, 2
suspīcor, -ārī, suspīcātum: to suspect, 3

tēmō, -ōnis m.: pole, beam (of a wagon), 1
terror, terroris m.: terror, fear, 1
turma, -ae f.: troop of cavalry (30 men), 1

- 1 **id, quod erat:** *that which was (the case)*
aliquid nōvī...cōnsiliī: (*namely that*) *some new plan*; partitive gen., aliquid is acc. subj. of inītum (esse),
inītum (esse): *had been initiated*; pf. pass. ineō
- 2 **cohōrtēs...duās...reliquās...iussit:** *ordered the cohorts to...two (cohorts) to... the remaining (cohorts) to...;* acc. object of iussit
in eam partem: *into that direction*
ex reliquīs: *from the remaining (cohorts)*
- 3 **armārī:** *to arm themselves*; “to be armed”
subsequī: present deponent inf.
- 4 **paulō longius:** *a little farther*; abl. of degree of difference with comparative adverb
processisset: plpf. subjunctive
suōs: *that his (soldiers)*; acc. subj. of pass. inf. premī, sustinēre and pass. inf. coīcī in an ind. discourse governed by animadvertit
- 5 **partibus:** *directions*
coīcī: pass. inf. coīciō, -ere
- 6 **omnī...demessō frūmentō:** abl. abs., omnī is i-stem 3rd decl. adj. modifying frūmentō
- 7 **ūna, reliqua:** pars is feminine in gender
suspīcātī hostēs: *the enemy having suspected that...;* hostēs is nom. subj. of delituerant
nostrōs: *that our (men)*; acc. subj.
esse ventūrōs: ventūrōs esse; fut. inf. veniō
- 8 **dispersōs...occupātōs:** (*our soldiers*) *dispersed...and occupied*; acc. d.o. of adortī
adortī: (*the enemy*) *having attacked...*
depōsitīs armīs: abl. absolute; the men put down their weapons to gather food
- metendō:** *harvesting*; gerund of meteō
- 9 **paucīs interfectīs:** abl. absolute
incertīs ōrdinibus: *in unfixed ranks*
- 11 **pugnae:** *of fighting*; modifies genus
prīmō: *at first*; abl. time when
partēs: *directions*
- 13 **cum...insinuāverunt:** *when...;* + indicative, cum is adverbial not a prep.; sē is acc. d.o.
- 14 **pedibus:** *on foot*; “by feet,” abl. of manner
Aurigae: *drivers*; the drivers carried soldiers to battle, waited at a safe distance, and then returned to pick up soldiers when summoned
- 15 **ita...ut:** *in such a way...that*; introducing a result clause, pres. subj. in primary sequence
- 16 **expeditum...receptum:** *an easy recovery for their (people)*; “an unencumbered recovery”
- 17 **tantum:** *only*; adverb
- 18 **efficiunt utī...consuerint:** *they bring it about that they have become accustomed...;* noun result clause, utī is another form for ut (ūtī is inf. of ūtor) and consuerint is perfect subj.
- 19 **sustinere:** *to restrain*; “hold up”
brevī (tempore): *in a short (time)*; time when
per temōnem...in iugō: The Britons ran out from the chariot onto the wooden pole (tēmō) attached between the two horses to the chariot. Then they stood on the harness (iugum) binding the horses together
- 22 **sē...recipere:** *retreat*; a common idiom, “take themselves back”
citissimē: superlative adverb

Indirect Discourse: Accusative Subject + Infinitive

In secondary sequence, translate a present infinitive as imperfect, perfect as pluperfect, and “will” as “would.”

| | | |
|---------|--|--|
| Present | Caesarem mīlitēs mittere (<i>says</i>) that Caesar is sending soldiers (<i>said</i>) that Caesar was sending soldiers | mīlitēs ā Caesar mittī (<i>says</i>) that the soldiers are sent by Caesar (<i>says</i>) that the soldiers were sent by Caesar |
| Perfect | Caesarem mīlitēs mīsisse (<i>says</i>) that Caesar has sent* soldiers (<i>said</i>) that Caesar had sent soldiers | mīlitēs ā Caesar missōs esse (<i>says</i>) that the soldiers has been sent* by C. (<i>said</i>) that the soldiers had been sent by C. |
| Future | Caesarem mīlitēs missūrum esse (<i>says</i>) that Caesar will send soldiers (<i>said</i>) that Caesar would send soldiers | <i>*alternatives: sent, were sent</i> |

34.1 Quibus rēbus perturbātīs nostrīs novitate pugnae tempore 1
 opportunissimō Caesar auxilium tulit: namque eius adventū hostēs 2
 constitērunt, nostrī sē ex timore recepērunt. 2. Quō factō, ad lacessendum 3
 hostem et committendum proelium aliēnum esse tempus arbitrātus suō sē 4
 locō continuit et brevī tempore intermissō in castra legiōnēs redūxit. 5
 Dum 5
 haec geruntur, nostrīs omnibus occupātīs quī erant in agrīs reliquī 6
 discessērunt. 4. Secutae sunt continuōs complurēs diēs tempestātēs, quae et 7
 nostrōs in castrīs continērent et hostem ā pugnā prohibērent.

5. Interim barbarī nuntiōs in omnēs partēs dimīsērunt paucitātemque 8
 nostrōrum mīlitum suīs praedicāvērunt et quanta praedae faciendae atque in 10
 perpetuum suī liberandī facultās darētur, sī Rōmānōs castrīs expulissent, 11
 demonstrāvērunt. Hīs rēbus celeriter magnā multitudine peditātūs 12
 equitātūsque coactā ad castra vēnērunt.

35.1 Caesar, etsī idem quod superiōribus diēbus acciderat fore vidēbat, ut, sī 13
 essent hostēs pulsī, celeritāte perīculum effugerent, tamen nactus equitēs 15
 circiter XXX, quōs Commius Atrēbās, dē quō ante dictum est, sēcum 16
 transportāverat, legiōnēs in aciē prō castrīs constituit. 2. Commissō proeliō 17
 diutius nostrōrum mīlitum impetum hostēs ferre non potuērunt ac terga 18
 vertērunt. 3. Quōs tantō spatiō secutī quantum cursū et vīribus efficere 19
 potuērunt, complūrēs ex eīs occidērunt, deinde omnibus longē lātēque 20
 aedificiīs incensīs sē in castra recēpērunt.

36.1 Eōdem diē lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem dē pace vēnērunt.

ācer, ācris, ācre: sharp, fierce, eager, bitter 2
aciēs, -ēī f.: sharp edge, battle line, army, 2
aedificium, -iī n.: building, edifice, 2
alienus, -a, -um: of another, foreign, 2
ante: before, in front of (acc); *adv.* before, 4
Atrebas, Atrēbātis, m.: Atrebatēs, 3
auxilium, -iī n.: help, aid, assistance, 3
brevis, -e: short, 3
committō, -ere: commence, commit, entrust 4
Commius, -iī m.: Commiūs, 2
continuus, -a, -um: continuous, unceasing, 1
cursus, -ūs m.: course, running, haste, 3
deinde: then, next, from that place, 1
dimittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus: send (away), 3
diū: a long time, long, 1
effugiō, -ere, -fūgī: flee out, escape, 1
expellō, ere, pulī, pulsum: drive out, expel 2
incendō, -ere, -ī, -ēnsus: kindle, burn, 2
lacessō, -ere, -ivī: provoke, goad, irritate, 1
latē: widely, far and wide, 2
liberō (1): free, liberate, 3

namque: to be sure, for, 1
nanciscor, nanciscī, nactus: obtain, meet, 1
novitās, -tātis f.: newness, strangeness, 1
occidō, -ere, occidī, occisus: kill, cut down 4
occupō (1): seize, occupy, 4
opportūnus, -a, -um: fit, suitable, useful, 2
paucitās, -tātis f. (1): fewness, scarcity, 3
peditātus, -ūs m.: infantry, 3
pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus: drive, push, 2
perpetuus, -a, -um: constant, everlasting, 4
praeda, -ae f.: loot, spoils, cattle, 2
praedicō (1): proclaim, publish, declare, 2
redūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus: to bring back, 3
sequor, -ī, secūtus: follow, pursue, 4
spatium, -iī n.: space, room, extent, 4
tempestās, tempestātis f.: storm, 3
tergum, -iī n.: back, hide, rear, 1
timor, -oris m.: fear, dread, anxiety, 2
transportō (1): carry over, take across, 3
vertō, -ere, -sī, -rsus: turn, change, 1
vīs, vīs, f., pl. virēs: force, power, violence, 4

- 1 **quibus rēbus:** *because of these things*; “which things,” abl. of cause
perturbātis nostris: *our (men) having been set into confusion*; abl. abs.
novitate pugnae: abl. of means with *perturbātis*
tempore opportunissimō: abl. of time when
- 2 **tulit:** perfect, ferō
hostēs: nom. subject
- 3 **constitērunt:** *stopped*; “stood still”
sē...recēpērunt: *retreated*; idiom
quō factō: *this having been done*; “which having been done,” abl. abs.
ad...aliēnum esse tempus: *that it was an unfavorable time...*; ind. discourse governed by perfect deponent pple *arbitratus*
ad lacessendum...commitendum: *for provoking...*; ad + gerundives: in a gerund-gerundive flip: the gerundives should be translated as gerunds (-ing) with acc. objs.
- 4 **suō sē locō continuit:** *he held his ground*; “held himself in his position”
- 6 **quī erant...reliquī:** *(those) who...*; the antecedent is subject of *discessērunt*
- 7 **secūtae sunt:** pf. deponent, subject *tempestātēs*
continuōs...diēs: *for...*; acc. of duration
quae...continenērent...prohibērent: *which (sort) contained...*; or “which would contain...” relative clause of characteristic with impf. subj.
- 10 **suīs:** *to their people*; dat. indirect object
quanta...facultās...darētur: *how great an opportunity would...*; indirect question governed by *demonstrāvērunt*
praedae faciendae: *of freeing...*; gerund-gerundive flip; translate the gerundive as a gerund; modifying *facultās*
in perpetuum: *forever*; “into perpetuity”
- 11 **suī liberandī:** *of freeing themselves*; gerund-gerundive flip; modifying *facultās*
- 12 **his rēbus:** *because of these matters*; abl. cause
multitudine...coactā: ablative absolute
- 14 **idem fore:** *the same thing...would happen...*; “same thing...would be,” ind. disc. governed by *vidēbat*, *fore* is equivalent to *futūrum esse*, fut. infinitive of *sum, esse*;
superiōribus diebus: *in the days before yesterday*; abl. time when
ut...effugerent: *(namely) that...*; noun result clause in apposition to *idem*
- 15 **essent pulsī:** plpf. passive subjunctive, *pellō*
celeritate: *with speed*; abl. of manner
nactus: pf. deponent pple, *nanciscor*
dē quō: *concerning whom*
- 16 **dictum est:** *it was mentioned (by me)*
- 17 **commissō proeliō:** *the battle having been begun*; common idiom, *proelium committō*
- 18 **diūtius:** *longer*; comparative adv. *diū*
nostrōrum militum: subject gen. + *impetum*
hostēs: nom. subject of *potuērunt*, pf. *possum*
ferre: *to endure*
- 19 **quōs...secūtī:** *having pursued these (Britons)*; “having pursued whom”
tantō spatiō...quantum: *by as great an interval as*; abl. of degree of difference
- 19 **cursū et vīribus:** *with speed and (troop) force*; *vīribus* denotes troop size; abl. manner
- 20 **potuērunt...occidērunt:** the Roman cavalry is the subject, *complūrēs* is the direct object
omnibus...incensis: abl. absolute
longē lātēque: *far and wide*
- 21 **sē recēpērunt:** *retreated*, “took themselves back”
- 22 **Eōdem diē:** abl. time when

Gerunds

A gerund (present stem + *nd* + 2nd decl. neut. sg. endings) is a verbal noun. It can govern an acc. obj. and is easy to distinguish from a gerundive because a gerund has only -ī/-ō/-um endings and does not modify a nearby noun.

| | | |
|------------|---|--|
| Nominative | <i>Navigāre est difficile. To sail is difficult.</i> | |
| Genitive | <i>facultās <u>navigandī</u> opportunitas for sailing</i> | |
| | <i><u>navigandī</u> causā for the sake of sailing</i> | |
| Dative | <i>ūtilis <u>navigandō</u> useful for sailing</i> | |
| Accusative | <i>ad <u>navigandum</u> for sailing (to sail)</i> | |
| Ablative | <i><u>navigandō</u> by sailing</i> | |
| | <i>in <u>navigandō</u> in sailing</i> | |

| | | |
|------|-------------------|--------------------|
| Gen. | <i>navigandī</i> | <i>of sailing</i> |
| Dat. | <i>navigandō</i> | <i>for sailing</i> |
| Acc. | <i>navigandum</i> | <i>sailing</i> |
| Abl. | <i>navigandō</i> | <i>by sailing</i> |

an infinitive not gerund as subject

gen. + *causā/grātiā* expresses purpose
 dative of purpose
 ad + gerund expresses purpose
 ablative with or without a preposition

ulciscendī Rōmānōs *of avenging the Romans* occasionally with an acc. object

13.1 In omnī Galliā eōrum hominum, quī aliquō sunt numerō atque honōre, 1
genera sunt duo. Nam plebēs paene servōrum habētur locō, quae nihil audet
per sē, nullō adhibētur cōnsiliō. 2. Plērīque, cum aut aere aliēnō aut
magnitūdine tribūtōrum aut iniūriā potentiōrum premuntur, sēsē in
servitūtem dicant nōbilibus: in hōs eadem omnia sunt iūra, quae dominīs in 5
servōs. 3. Sed dē hīs duōbus generibus alterum est Druidum, alterum equitum.
4. Illī rēbus dīvinīs intersunt, sacrificia publica ac prīvāta prōcūrant, religiōnēs
interpretantur: ad hōs magnus adulēscentium numerus disciplīnae causā
concurrat, magnōque hī sunt apud eōs honōre. 5. Nam ferē dē omnibus
controversiīs publicīs privātisque constituunt et, sī quod est admissum 10
facinus, sī caedēs facta, sī dē hērēditāte, dē finibus contrōversia est, idem
decernunt, praemia poenāsque constituunt; 6. sī quī aut privātus aut populus
eōrum dēcrētō nōn stetit, sacrificiīs interdicunt. Haec poena apud eōs est
gravissima. 7. Quibus ita est interdictum, hī numerō impiōrum ac
scelerātōrum habentur, hīs omnēs dēcēdunt, aditum sermonemque 15
dēfugiunt, nē quid ex contāgiōne incommodī accipiant, neque hīs petentibus
ius redditur neque honōs ūllus commūnicātur. 8. Hīs autem omnibus
Druidibus praeest ūnus, quī summam inter eōs habet auctoritātem.

aditus, -ūs m.: approach, access, entrance, 2
adhibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum: hold toward, admit, apply, 1
admittō, -ere, mīsi, missum: admit, commit, allow, 2
adulescens, -ntis m./f.: youth, 1
aes, aeris n.: bronze, copper, 2
alienus, -a, -um: of another, foreign, 2
auctōritās, -tātis f.: influence, clout, 3
audeō, -ēre, ausus sum: dare, venture, 4
caedēs, caedis f.: murder, slaughter, killing 2
communicō (1): share, impart, 4
concurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursus: run eagerly, clash, 2
contāgio, -giōnis f.: contact; contagion, 1
dēcēdō, -ere, cessī, cessum: depart, withdraw, die, 4
dēcernō, ere, crēvi, crētum: decide, judge, 3
dēfugiō, -ere, -fūgi: to flee away, avoid, 1
dicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum: dedicate, devote, 1
divinus, -a, -um: divine, 1
dominus, -ī m.: master, 1
facinus, facinoris n.: deed; bad deed, crime 2
hērēditas, -tātis f.: inheritance, 1
honor(s), -ōris m.: honor, glory; offering, 2
impius, -a, -um: unholy, impious, 1
incommodus, -a, -um: unfortunate, disastrous, 3
iniūria, -ae f.: wrong, insult, injustice, 4

interdicō, -ere, -dixī, -dictum: to forbid, prohibit, outlaw, 2
interpretor, -ārī, : to translate, interpret, 1
intersum, -esse, -fuī: take part in, engage in, 1
iūs, iūris n.: justice, law, right, 2
nōbilis, -e: noble, renowned, 3
paene: almost, nearly, 2
plebs, plēbis, f.: common people, masses, 2
plērusque, -raque, -rumque: very many, 2
poena, poenae, f.: punishment, penalty, 3
potēns, -entis: powerful, ruling (*gen.*), 2
praesum, -esse, -fuī: be over, preside over, 2
prōcūrō (1): take care of, look after, 1
reddō, -ere, -didī, -ditus: give back, return, 2
religiō, religiōnis f.: superstitious rites, ritual, divine manifestation, 3
sacrificium, ī n.: sacrifice, 4
scelerātus, -a, -um: wicked, profane, guilty 1
sermo, -mōnis m.: conversation, discourse, 3
servitūs, servitūtis, f.: servitude, 2
servus, -ī, m.: slave, 1
stō, -āre, steti, stātum: stand still, stop, 3
tribūtum, -ī n.: tribute, tax, contribution, 2

- 1 **eōrum hominum quī:** *of all these peoples*
who; partitive genitive
aliquō numerō...honōre: *are of some account*
and honor; abl. of description, here predicate of sunt
- 2 **plēbēs:** *the masses*; though plural, it governs a 3rd sg. verb
habētur: *are considered (to be)*; “are held”
locō: *in the position...*; i.e. status in life
- 3 **per sē:** *by themselves*; lit. “through themselves”
adhībētur: *are admitted*; + dat. of compound
cōnsiliō: *council*; “assembly,” dat. compound
- 4 **cum...premuntur:** *when they are*
overwhelmed; cum is an adverbial conjunction
aere aliēnō: *by debt*; lit. “another’s money”
portentiōrum: *of those more powerful*; gen. pl.
sēsē: *themselves*; emphatic form of sē
dicant: *they dedicate*; 1st conj. pres., not dīcō
5 **sunt:** *(they) have*; “are (to them),” supply
 dat. of possession eīs, parallel to dominīs
in hōs: *over them*; “towards them,” i.e. plebēs
quae dominīs: *which masters (have)*; “which
 (there are) to masters,” dat. of possession with
 missing linking verb sunt
in servōs: *over slaves*; “towards slaves”
- 6 **alterum (genus)...alterum (genus):** *one...the*
other; neuter in agreement with missing genus
- 7 **illī:** i.e. Druids, nom. pl.
rēbus dīvīnīs: dat. obj. of compound intersunt
intersunt...(et) prōcūrant...(et)
interpretantur: asyndeton, add conjunctions
- 9 **disciplīnae causā:** *for the sake of training*
magnō...honōre: *of great honor*; abl. of
 description in the predicative position after sunt
apud eōs: *among them*; i.e. among the Gauls
- 10 **sī quod...facinus:** *if any crime...*; aliquis,
 aliquod is a common indefinite adjective
- (any, some), but quī, quod is commonly used
 as an indefinite (which → any, some) after sī,
 nisi, num, and nē. The mnemonic for this
 construction is the jingle “After sī, nisi, num,
 and nē, all the ali’s go away” (in other words
 indefinite aliquod becomes just quod)
- 11 **facta (est):** *has been committed*; pf. pass.
dē hērēditāte (aut) dē finibus: asyndeton,
 supply “aut”
- 12 **īdem:** *likewise*
sī quī: *if anyone...*; quī indefinite before sī, see
 line 10 above
- 13 **dēcrētō nōn stetit:** *did not abide by the*
decision; “did not stand by the (thing) having
 been decided; abl. place where; pf. stō, stāre
sacrificiīs: *from the sacrifices*; abl. separation
- 14 **apud eōs:** *among them*; i.e. among the Gauls
quibus...est interdictum, hī: *these for whom*
it has been prohibited; “for whom it has been
 prohibited, these...” hī is the antecedent of the
 relative clause beginning with quibus
numerō: *in the number, group*; place where
- 15 **habentur:** *are considered (to be)*; “are held
 (to be),” see line 2 above
hīs: *from these*; i.e. from those placed in the
 group of the wicked; abl. of separation
dēcēdunt (et)...dēfugiunt: asyndeton, supply
 a conjunction
aditum: *an encounter*
- 16 **nē quid incommodī:** *lest anything unsuitable*;
 quid is indefinite following sī, nisi, num, or
 nē; incommodī is a partitive gen.
neque...neque: *neither...nor*
hīs petentibus: *to these seeking*; pres. pple
 petō is condition in force; dat. indirect object
- 17 **praeest:** *is over (+ dat)*; compound verbs
 often govern a dative object

Common Uses of the Dative

| <u>construction</u> | <u>example</u> | <u>translation</u> |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------|---|
| Dative of Indirect Object | eī filiam dat | <i>gives his daughter to him</i> |
| Dative of Compound Verbs | Druidibus praeest | <i>is over the Druids</i> |
| Dative of Agent + Pass. Periphrastic | sibi iter faciendum esse | <i>a journey must be made by him</i> |
| Dative of Purpose | hibernīs mūnītum | <i>fortified for winter-quarters</i> |
| Dative of Possession + sum | quae dominīs sunt | <i>which are to masters</i> (= masters have) |
| Dative of Interest (Advantage) | nostrīs gravissimus | <i>most grievous for our men</i> |
| Dative of Reference* | mihi vidētur | <i>it seems to me</i> (i.e. from my viewpoint) |
| Dative of Special Adjectives | fūgae similem | <i>similar to flight</i> |
| Double Dative (purpose + interest) | magnō ūsuī nostrīs fuit | <i>was for a great use to our men</i> → <i>served a great use to our men</i> |

*for some, interest and reference are the same construction

13.9 Hōc mortuō aut sī quī ex reliquīs excellit dignitāte succēdit, aut, sī sunt 1
plūrēs parēs, suffrāgiō Druidum, nōnnumquam etiam armīs dē principātū
contendunt. 10. Hī certō annī tempore in finibus Carnūtum, quae regiō
tōtīus Galliae media habētur, consīdunt in locō cōnsecrātō. Hūc omnēs
undique, quī contrōversiās habent, conveniunt eōrumque decrētīs iudiciīsque 5
parent. 11. Disciplīna in Britannīā reperta atque inde in Galliam trānslāta esse
exīstimātur, 12. et nunc, quī dīligentius eam rem cognōscere volunt,
plērūmque illō discendī causā proficīscuntur.

14.1 Druidēs ā bellō abesse cōnsuērunt neque tribūta ūnā cum reliquīs
pendunt; mīlitiae vacātiōnem omniumque rērum habent immunitātem. 2. 10
Tantīs excitātī praemiīs et suā sponte multī in disciplīnam conveniunt et ā
parentibus propinquīsque mittuntur. 3. Magnum ibi numerum versuum
ēdiscere dicuntur. Itaque annōs nōnnullī vīcēnōs in disciplīnā permanent. 4.
Neque fās esse exīstimant ea litterīs mandāre, cum in reliquīs ferē rēbus,
publicīs privātīsque ratiōnibus, Graecīs litterīs ūtantur. Id mihi duābus dē 15
causīs īnstituīse videntur, quod neque in vulgum disciplīnam efferrī velint
neque eōs, quī discunt, litterīs cōnfīsōs minus memoriae studēre: quod ferē
plērīsque accidit, ut praesidiō litterārum dīligentiam in perdiscendō ac
memoriam remittant. 5. In prīmīs hoc volunt persuādēre, nōn interīre
animās, sed ab aliīs post mortem transīre ad aliōs, atque hōc maximē ad 20
virtūtem excitārī putant metū mortis neglētō. Multa praetereā dē sīderibus
atque eōrum mōtū, dē mundī ac terrārum magnitudīne, dē rērum nātūrā, dē
dēorum immortalīum vī ac potestāte disputant et iuventūtī trādunt.

anima, -ae f.: breath, spirit, soul, 1

Carnūtēs, -um: Carnutes, 4

confīdō, -ere, confisus sum: trust, believe, rely upon, 4

consecrō (1): dedicate to a god, make holy 2

consīdeō, -ēre, -sēdī: to sit down, settle, 2

contendō, -ere, -ī, -ntus: strive; hasten, 4

dēcernō, ere, crēvī, crētum: decide, judge, 3

deus, -ī m.: god, divinity, deity, 4

dignitās, -tātis f.: worth, merit, worthiness, 1

dīligēns, -entis: careful, diligent, accurate, 2

dīligentia, -ae f.: diligence, attentiveness, 1

dīscō, -ere, -didicī: learn, get to know, 2

disputō (1): reckon, debate, argue, 1

ēdiscō, -ere, -didicī: to learn thoroughly, 1

efferrō, -ferre, -tulī, ēlātus: raise, lift up 4

ego: I, 2

excellō, -ere, : be distinguished, excel, 1

excitō (1): excite, rouse up, raise, inspire, 3

fās n.: right, divine law, duty, 1

Graecus, -a, -um: Greek, 2

hūc: to this place, hither, here 2

immortalīs, -e: immortal, 3

immunitās, -tātis f.: exception, immunity, 1

īnde: from there, then, afterward, 3

īstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum: set, establish, 3

īntereō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum: to die, perish, 3

iudicium, -ī n.: decision, judgment; trial 3

īuventūs, -tūtis f.: youth, 1

mandō (1): order, command, commit, 2

medius -a -um: in the middle of, 3

memoria, -ae f.: memory, 4

metus, -ūs f.: dread, fear, 2

mīlitia, -ae f.: military service; military, 2

mōrior, morī, mortuus sum: die, 2

mōtus, -ūs m.: motion, 3

mundus, -ī m.: the world, 1

nātūra, -ae f.: nature, 3

neglegō, ere, -lēxī, neglētum: to neglect, 3

nōnnullus, -a, -um: some, not none, 2

nōnnumquam: sometimes, not never, 1

nunc: now, at present, 2

pār, paris: equal, similar, even, 2

parens, -rentis m.: parent, ancestor, 1
pāreō, -ēre, -uī, pāritum: obey, yield (dat) 1
pendō, -ere, pependī, pensum: pay, weigh 2
perdiscō, -ere, -didici: learn thoroughly, 1
permaneō, -ere, -mansī: to remain, stay, 1
plērusque, -raque, -rumque: very many, 2
plūs (plūris): more, 4
potestās, -tātis f.: power, ability, capacity, 3
praesidium, -iī n.: guard, protection; assistance, 2
praetereā: besides, hereafter, 2
principātus, -ūs m.: leadership, rule, 2
propinquus, -a, -um: near, close; *subst.* kinsman, 2
putō (1): to think, imagine, 3
regiō, regiōnis f.: region, area, 1
remittō, -ere, -mīsī: send back, let go, relax, 4

reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertum: to discover, find, 1
sīdus, sīderis n.: star; group of stars, constellation, 1
sponte: willingly, voluntarily, 2
studeō, -ēre, uī: be eager, strive after, 1
succēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus: go up, approach, 2
suffrāgium, -iī n.: a vote, 1
terra, -ae. f.: earth, ground, land, 2
trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditum: to give over, hand down, 3
transferō, ferre, tulī, lātum: carry across, 1
tribūtum, -ī n.: tribute, tax, contribution, 2
vacātio, -tiōnis f.: exemption, immunity 1
vertō, -ere, -sī, -rsus: turn, change, 1
vīcenī, -a, -um: twenty each, 1
vīs, vīs, f., pl. virēs: force, power, violence, 4
vulgus, -ī n.: mass, mob, multitude, 2

-
- 1 **Hōc mortuō:** *this (one) having died*; i.e. “if this one has died,” abl. abs. is conditional in force, mortuus is pf. dep. pple morior, “having died,” or can be translated as a simple adj., ‘dead’
sī quī ex reliquīs: *if (anyone) who out of the rest...*; missing antecedent is subj. of succēdit
dignitāte: *in dignity*; abl. of respect, governed by excellit not by succēdit
- 2 **plūrēs:** *more*; nom. subj., parēs is nom. pred.
nōnnumquam etiam: *(and) sometimes even*;
suffrāgiō and armīs are parallel, abl. of means
- 3 **certō...tempore:** abl. of time when
finibus: *territory*
- 4 **media:** *center*; nom. predicate, the gen. tōtīus Galliae modifies media
habētur: *is considered*; “is held,” quae regiō is subject, quae is a relative adjective
- 6 **reperta (esse):** *to have been invented*; pf. pass. inf. governed by exīstimātur
trānslāta esse: pf. pass. inf. trānsferō
diligentius: comparative adverb
plērumque: *frequently*
illō: *to that place*; adverb
discendī causā: *for the sake of learning*; causā governs a preceding gen.; gerund gen. sg.
- 9 **cōnsu(ēv)ērunt:** *are accustomed*; present sense
ūnā: *together*; adverb
- 10 **pendunt:** *pay*; “weigh out”
- 11 **suā sponte:** *by their own will*
- 12 **versuum:** *of verses*; gen. pl.
- 13 **annōs...vīcēnōs:** *for twenty years*; duration
nōnnūllī: *several*; “not none”
- 14 **fās esse:** *that it is right*; impersonal verb in ind. discourse, mandāre is subject of esse
ea: *these (things)*; neut. pl., i.e. these teachings
litterīs: *to letters (of the alphabet)*; i.e. writing
cum...ūtantur: *although...*; this cum + pres. subjunctive is concessive
- 15 **id...īnstituīsse:** *to have established this*; i.e. not entrusting training to letters; pf. inf.
duābus dē causīs...quod: *for two reasons...(namely) because*; as often, the adjective precedes the preposition; dat. and abl. pl. of duō is duābus/duōbus not duīs
mihi videntur: *they seem to me*; “seem” is a common translation for the passive of videō
- 16 **in vulgum:** *to the masses*
efferrī: pass. inf., disciplīnam is acc. subj.
velint: *they wish*; pres. subj. of vōlō; quod + subjunctive denotes an alleged, not real, cause
- 17 **cōnfīsōs:** *having trusted in* + dat; pf. dep. pple
minus...studēre: *pay less attention to memory* “have less enthusiasm for memory” eōs is acc. subj., minus is a comparative adverb
- 18 **plērīsqe:** *to very many*; dat. of interest; -que does not decline, but plērus- does
quod...accidit ut: *because it happens...that*; accidit governs a noun result clause
praesidiō litterārum: *with the assistance of (written) letters*; “with the protection of...”
in perdiscendō: gerund abl. sg.
- 19 **remittant:** *they weaken*; “they let go”
in primīs: *in particular*; “among the first”
hoc...nōn interīre animās: *this...(namely) that...*; neuter sg. acc. object of persuādēre, animās is acc. subject in indirect discourse
ab aliīs...ad aliōs: *from some...into others*
- 20 **transīre:** animās is still acc. subject
hōc: *because of this*; i.e. the reincarnation of souls, abl. of cause
- 21 **excitārī:** *that (people) are roused*; add hominēs as acc. subject
metū...neglectō: abl. abs.
Multa: *many (things)*; neut. pl. acc. d.o.

15.1 Alterum genus est equitum. Hī, cum est ūsus atque aliquod bellum 1
 incidit (quod ferē ante Caesaris adventum quotanni accidere solēbat, utī aut
 ipsī iniūriās inferrent aut illātās prōpulsārent), omnēs in bellō versantur, 2.
 atque eōrum ut quisque est genere copiisque amplissimus, ita plūrimōs circum
 sē ambactōs clientēsque habet. Hanc ūnam grātiā potentiamque nōvērunt. 5

16.1 Nātiō est omnis Gallōrum admodum dēdita religiōnibus, 2. atque ob
 eam causam, quī sunt adfectī graviōribus morbīs quīque in proeliīs
 periculīsque versantur, aut prō victimīs hominēs immolant aut sē
 immolātūrōs vovent administrīsque ad ea sacrificia Druidibus ūtuntur, quod,
 prō vītā hominis nisi hominis vīta reddātur, 3. nōn posse deōrum 10
 immortalīum nūmen placārī arbitrantur, pūblicēque eiusdem generis habent
 īnstitutā sacrificia. Aliī immānī magnitūdine simulācra habent, 4. quōrum
 contexta vīminibus membra vīvīs hominibus complent; quibus succensīs,
 circumventī flammā exanimantur hominēs. 5. Supplicia eōrum quī in furtō
 aut in latrōciniō aut aliquā noxiā sint comprehēnsī grātiōra dīs immortalibus 15
 esse arbitrantur; sed, cum eius generis cōpia dēfēcit, etiam ad innocentium
 supplicia dēscendunt.

17.1 Deum maximē Mercurium colunt. Huius sunt plūrima simulācra:
 hunc omnium inventōrem artium ferunt, hunc viārum atque itinerum
 ducem, hunc ad quaestūs pecūniae mercatūrāsque habēre vim maximam 20
 arbitrantur. Post hunc Apollinem et Mārtem et Iovem et Minervam.

adficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum: afflict, affect, 3
administer, -strī m.: performer, 1
admodum: completely, quite; just about, 2
ambactus, -ī m.: vassal, 1
amplus, -a, -um: ample, full, spacious, 2
ante: before, in front of (acc); *adv.* before, 4
Apollo, Apollinis m.: Apollo, 2
ars, artis f.: art, 1
circum: around, round about, 2
cliens, -entis m.: client, dependent, 4
colō, -ere, coluī, cultum: till, farm; worship, 1
comprehendō, -ere, -dī: seize, arrest; grasp 4
contegō, -ere, -texī, -tectum: to cover over, 1
dēscendō, -ere, ī, ēsus: descend; sink to; stoop to, 1
dēditus, -a, -um: given to, devoted to, 1
dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum: fail, give out, 3
deus, -ī m.: god, divinity, deity, 4
dux, ducis m./f.: leader, guide, chief, 4
exanimō (1): deprive of breath; kill, stun, 2
flamma, ae f.: flame, 3
furtum, -ī n.: theft, robbery, deceit, 1
grātia, -ae f.: gratitude; favor, thanks, 2
grātus, -a, -um: pleasing; grateful, 1

immānis, -e: immense, enormous, 1
immolō (1): to sacrifice, immolate, 3
immortalis, -e: immortal, 3
incidō, -ere, -cidī, -cisum: happen, fall in with, 1
iniūria, -ae f.: wrong, insult, injustice, 4
innocens, innocentis: harmless, blameless, 1
instituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum: set, establish, 2
inventor, -ōris m.: inventor, 1
Iuppiter, Iovis m.: Jupiter, 2
latrōcinium, -ī n.: banditry, robbery, 1
Mars, Martis m.: Mars, god of victory, 2
membrum, -ī n.: limb, member, 1
mercātūra, -ae f.: trade, traffic, 1
Mercurius, -ī m.: Mercury, 1
Minerva, -ae f.: Minerva, 2
morbis, -ī m.: disease, sickness, illness, 2
natiō, natiōnis f.: nation, people, tribe, 1
noscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtum: to learn, 1
noxia, -ae f.: fault, offence, crime, 1
nūmen, -minis n.: divine spirit or consent 1
pecūnia, -ae f.: money, 3
placō (1): soothe, calm, appease, placate, 1
plūrimus, -a, -um: most, very many, 4

potentia, -ae f.: power, might, strength, 1
prōpellō, -ere, -pellī, -pulsum: drive forward
 or push away, 3
quaestus, -ūs m.: gain, profit, advantage, 1
quotannis: every year, year by year, 1
reddō, -ere, -didī, -ditus: give back, return, 2
religiō, religiōnis f.: superstitious rites, ritual,
 divine manifestation, 3
sacrificium, ī n.: sacrifice, 4
simulācrum, -ī n.: likeness, image, 2

soleō, -ēre, -itus sum: be accustomed, 1
succendō, -ere, -dī, censum: kindle under, 2
supplicium, -iī n.: punishment, 3
versor (1): be engaged in, move about, deal with, 3
via, -ae, f.: road, way, path, 2
victima, -ae f.: animal for sacrifice, victim, 1
vīmen, vīminis n.: twig, wicker, withe, 1
vīs, vīs, f., pl. virēs: force, power, violence, 4
vīvus, -a, -um: living, alive, 2
voveō, -ēre, vōvī, vōtum: vow; pray 1

- 1 **alterum genus:** *the other kind*; In 13.3 Caesar distinguished two groups, Druids and Knights. Here Caesar addresses the latter group.
equitum: *of knights*
Hī: *these*; i.e. the knights
cum est ūsus: *when there is a need*; “is a use”
- 2 **incidit:** *occurs, happens*
quod: *which*
utī...inferrent...prōpulsārent: (*namely*) *that...*; utī is an alternative to ut; noun result clause in apposition to quod with impf. subjunctives (secondary sequence) governed by accīdere
- 3 **ipsī:** *they themselves*; i.e. the knights
illātās: *carried on*; PPP inferō, supply inūriās
- 4 **eōrum ut quisque...ita:** *in the proportion as each one of them is...so...;* in other words “the more...the more,” ut and ita are correlatives
genere copīisque: *in birth and...;* abl. respect
amplissimus: *very distinguished*
- 5 **hanc...grātiam:** *this lone (form) of influence*
nōverunt: *they have come to learn*; or “they know,” pf. noscō
- 6 **dēdita:** *devoted to*; governs a dative plural
ob eam causam: *for this reason*
- 7 **quī:** (*those*) *who...*
sunt adfectī: pf. passive adficiō, + abl. means
quīque: *and (those) who...;* second parallel clause parallel to the first
- 8 **prō victimīs:** *instead of sacrificial animals*
immolātūrōs (esse): *will sacrifice (them)*; fut. inf., sē is acc. subj.; governed by vovent
- 9 **administrīs...Druidibus:** *Druids as performers*; abl. obj. of ūtuntur
ad...: *for...;* expressing purpose

- quod:** *because*
- 10 **prō vitā hominis:** *for the life of a man*;
 governed by the nisi...reddātur
posse...placārī: numen is acc. subject
prō vitā hominis: *for the life of a man*;
 - 11 **eiusdem generis:** *of the same sort*; gen. of quality
 - 12 **immāni magnitūdine:** *of immense size*; abl. of quality, immānis is an i-stem 3rd decl. adj.
simulācra: *likeness*; Caesar describes image in the likeness of a man made of wicker
 - 13 **membra:** acc. direct object of complent
vīvīs hominibus: abl. of means
quibus succensīs: *with these (images)...*; abl. abs. Caesar prefers to use a relative pronoun where English prefers the demonstrative
 - 14 **quī...sint comprehensī:** *who...have been caught*; pf. pass. subj. in a relative clause of characteristic
 - 15 **grātiora:** *more pleasing*; acc. pred. with esse
dīs immortālibus: *to the immortal gods*; an alternative form for dat. pl. deīs
 - 16 **eius generis cōpia:** *supply of this sort*; i.e. of criminals
 - 18 **Huius:** *of this one*; i.e. Mercury, gen. sg.
 - 19 **ferunt:** *they call this one the inventor...;*
 governs a double accusative, inventōrem is in the predicative position
hunc...ducem: *they call this one the guide...;*
 - 20 **hunc...habēre:** *that this one...;* ind. discourse governed by arbitrantur
vim maximam: *the greatest influence*
 - 21 **Apollinem...Minervam:** supply colunt

volō, velle, voluī: to wish: Regular 3rd Conj. except the infinitive, present indicative and present subjunctive

| | pres. | impf. | fut. | perf. | plupf. | fut. pf. | present indicative | present subjunctive | imperfect subjunctive |
|--|------------|-----------------|---------------|------------|----------------|----------------------|---------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|
| | vult | volēbat | volet | voluit | volerat | volerit | volō | velim | vellem |
| | she wishes | she was wishing | she will wish | she wished | she had wished | she will have wished | volumus | velimus | vellēmus |
| | | | | | | | vīs | velīs | vellēs |
| | | | | | | | vult | velit | vellet |
| | | | | | | | vultis ¹ | velitis | vellētis |
| | | | | | | | volunt ² | velint ⁴ | vellent ⁵ |

¹p. 14, 46 ²p. 28 ³p. 52 ⁴p. 28, 42, 58, 60 ⁵p. 10, 40, 52, 58, 62

17.2. Dē hīs eandem ferē, quam reliquae gentēs, habent opiniōnem: 1
 Apollinem morbōs dēpellere, Minervam operum atque artificiōrum initia
 trādere, Iovem imperium caelestium tenēre, Martem bella regere. 3. Huic,
 cum proeliō dīmicare constituērunt, ea quae bellō cēperint plērūmque
 dēvoent: cum superāvērunt, animalia capta immolant reliquāsque rēs in 5
 ūnum locum cōferunt. 4. Multīs in civitatibus hārum rērum exstrūctōs
 tumulōs locīs consecrātis conspicārī licet; 5. neque saepe accidit ut neglēctā
 quispiam religiōne aut capta apud sē occultāre aut posita tollere audēret,
 gravissimumque eī reī supplicium cum cruciātū constitūtum est.

18.1 Gallī sē omnēs ab Dīte patre prōgnātōs praedicant idque ab Druidibus 10
 prōditum dīcunt. 2. Ob eam causam spatia omnis temporis nōn numerō
 diērum sed noctium finiunt; diēs nātālēs et mēsum et annōrum initia sic
 observant ut noctem diēs subsequātur. 3. In reliquīs vītāe īnstitūtīs hōc ferē ab
 reliquīs differunt, quod suōs līberōs, nisi cum adolēvērunt, ut mūnus mīlītiaē
 sustinēre possint, palam ad sē adīre non patiuntur filiumque puerīlī aetāte in 15
 pūblicō in cōspectū patris adsistere turpe dūcunt.

adeō, -īre, i(v)ī, itus: approach, encounter, 2
adolescō, -ere, adolevī: to grow up, 1
adsistō, -ere, adstifī: stand by, set near, 1
aetās, aetātis f.: age, time, lifetime, 1
animal, animalis n.: animal, 2
Apollo, Apollinis m.: Apollo, 2
artificium, -ī m.: work, craft, work of art, 1
audeō, -ēre, ausus sum: dare, venture, 4
caelestis, -e: celestial, heavenly; *subs.* gods, 1
cōferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum: bring together, gather, 2
conficiō, -ere: to exhaust, finish, 4
consecrō (1): dedicate to a god, make holy 2
conspicō, -ūs, m.: look, sight, view, 2
conspicor, -ārī: catch sight of, perceive, 1
cruciātus, -ūs m.: torture, torment, 2
dēpellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum: drive out, 1
dēvoeō, -ēre, vōvī, vōtum: vow, sacrifice, 1
differō, -ferre, distulī: differ, be different, 2
dīmicō (1): brandish weapons; contend, 1
Dis, Dītis, -ī m.: Dis, Pluto, 1
exstruō, -ere, -struxī, -structum: build up, 1
finiō, -īre: to end, limit, bound, 1
gens, gentis, f.: people, tribe, nation, 1
immolō (1): to sacrifice, immolate, 3
īnstitutum, ī n.: institution, practice, custom, 2
Iuppiter, Iovis m.: Jupiter, 2
līberī, -ōrum m.: children 2
Mars, Martis m.: Mars, god of victory, 2
mensis, -is m.: month, 2
mīlītia, -ae f.: military service; military, 2

Minerva, -ae f.: Minerva, 2
morbū, -ī m.: disease, sickness, illness, 2
mūnus, -eris n.: service, duty; tax, gift, 1
nātālis, -e: natal, of birth, 1
neglēgō, ere, -lēxī, neglēctum: to neglect, 3
observō (1): watch, observe, attend to, 2
occultō (1): hide, conceal, 3
opus, -eris n.: work, deed, toil, 2
opīniō, -niōnis f.: opinion, thought, belief, 2
palam: openly, publicly, 2
pater, patris, m.: father, 4
patior, -ī, passus: suffer, endure; allow, 2
praedicō (1): proclaim, publish, declare, 2
prōdō, ere, didī, ditum: bring forth; betray 2
prōgnātus, -a, -um: born, sprung from, 1
puerīlis, -e: youthful, childish; silly, 1
quispiam, quae-, quod-: anyone, anything (adj. any), 2
regō, -ere, rēxī, rectum: rule, lead, direct, 1
religiō, religiōnis f.: superstitious rites, ritual,
 divine manifestation, 3
saepe: often, 3
sic: thus, in this way, 3
spatium, -ī n.: space, room, extent, 4
supplicium, -ī n.: punishment, 3
tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātum: raise, destroy, 2
trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditum: to give over,
 hand down, pass down, 3
tumulus, -ī m.: pile, heap, mound, hill, 1
turpis, turpe: ugly, shameful, 2

- 1 **Dē hīs**: *concerning these*; i.e. Apollo, Minerva, Juno, Jupiter
eandem...quam reliquae gentēs: *the same... as the rest of the people (have)*; “the same... which the rest of the people (have),” eandem modifies opiniōnem
- 2 **Apollinem...Minervam...Iovem...Martem**: *that Apollo...(and) that Minerva...(and) that Jupiter...(and) that Mars...*; acc. subjects of ind. discourse in apposition to opiniōnem; asyndeton, supply conjunctions
- 3 **huīc**: *to this one*; i.e. Mars
- 4 **cum proeliō**: *when...in battle*; cum is adverbial
ea quae...cēperint: *those things which...*; ea is neuter pl. object of dēvoent; cēperint is pf. subjunctive in a relative clause of characteristic
- 5 **cum superāvērunt**: *when they have overcome (an enemy)*
- 6 **multīs**: modifies cīvitatibus; placing the adj. before the preposition emphasizes the role of the adjective
hārum rērum: *of these things*; modifies tumulōs
- 7 **locis consecrātīs**: *in...*; abl. place where
ut quispiam...auderet: *that anyone...dare to*; noun result clause, impf. subjunctive audeō which governs complementary infinitives
neglēctā...religiōne: *with religious observance...*; ablative absolute
- 8 **capta**: *things seized*; PPP capiō in neuter pl., i.e. the rēs in line 5
apud sē: *in their home*
- posita tollere**: *to destroy things having been put aside*; PPP pōnō, -ere in neuter pl.
- 9 **eī rēi**: *for this matter*; dat. sg.
- 10 **sē...prōgnātōs (esse)**: *that they were born*; prōgnātōs is either an acc. predicate with missing inf. esse or part of a pf. passive inf.
id...prōditum (esse): *that this was brought forth...*; pf. pass. inf. prōdō in ind. discourse
- 11 **ob eam causam**: *for this reason*
spatia omnis temporis: *intervals of every (period of) time*
- 12 **noctium**: i-stem gen. plural nox, noctis
et mēsum (initia) et annōrum initia: *and the beginnings of months and of years*; acc. object of observant
sic...ut: *in this way...so that*; result clause
- 13 **hōc...quod**: *in this...(namely) because*; abl. of respect governed by differunt
suōs liberōs...adire: *that their children...*; acc. subj. of ind. discourse following patiuntur
- 14 **mūnus militiae**: *military service*; “service of the military”
- 15 **nōn patiuntur**: *do not allow*; 3rd pl. pres. patior
- 16 **filiumque...adsistere (esse) turpe dūcunt**: *and they consider it is shameful that a son... stand...*; supply (esse); the infinitive adsistere is subject of the missing esse and turpe is acc. predicate; all indirect discourse governed by dūcunt, filium is acc. subject of adsistere
puerili aetate: *of a boy’s age*; abl. of quality

Common Uses of the Ablative

| <u>construction</u> | <u>example</u> | <u>translation</u> |
|---|------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Ablative Absolute | urbe captā | <i>the city having been captured</i> |
| Ablative of Means | stilō scrībēns | <i>writing with a stylus</i> |
| Ablative of Agent | ā matre vocātur | <i>he is called by his mother</i> |
| Ablative of Separation (includes From Which) | timore liberātur | <i>she is free from fear</i> |
| Ablative of Manner | cum dīligentiā | <i>with diligence</i> |
| Ablative of Accompaniment | cum amīcīs | <i>with friends</i> |
| Ablative of Place Where | in urbibus | <i>in the cities</i> |
| Ablative of Place From Which | ab marī | <i>from the sea</i> |
| Ablative of Time When | eō tempore | <i>at that time</i> |
| Ablative of Respect (Specification) | linguā differunt | <i>differ in respect to language</i> |
| Ablative of Quality (Description) | est animō bonō | <i>is of good will</i> |
| Ablative of Cause | gaudiō commōtus | <i>moved by joy</i> |
| Ablative of Comparison | clārior luce | <i>brighter than light</i> |
| Ablative of Degree of Difference | multō clārior | <i>much brighter</i> |
| w/ verbs: potior, utor, fungor, fruor, vescor | utī gladiō | <i>to employ a sword</i> |
| w/ adjectives: dignus, indignus | glōriā indignus | <i>unworthy of glory</i> |

19.1 Virī, quantās pecūniās ab uxōribus dōtis nōmine accēpērunt, tantās ex
 suīs bonīs aestimātiōne factā, cum dōtibus commūnicant. 2. Huius omnis
 pecūniae coniūctim ratiō habētur fructūsque servāntur: uter eōrum vītā
 superāvit, ad eum pars utrūsque cum fructibus superiōrum temporum
 pervenit. 3. Virī in uxōrēs, sicutī in liberōs, vītāe necisque habent potestātem;
 et cum paterfamiliae illūstriōre locō nātus dēcessit, eius propinquī conveniunt
 et, dē morte sī rēs in suspiciōnem venit, dē uxōribus in servīlem modum
 quaestiōnem habent et, sī compertum est, ignī atque omnibus tormentīs
 excruciatās interficiunt. 4. Fūnera sunt prō cultū Gallōrum magnifica et
 sūmptuōsa; omniaque quae vīvīs cordī fuisse arbitrantur in ignem īferunt,
 etiam animālia, ac paulō suprā hanc memoriā servī et clientēs, quōs ab eīs
 dīllectōs esse constābat, iustīs fūneribus cōfectīs ūnā cremābantur.

20.1 Quae cīvitātēs commodius suam rem pūblicā administrāre
 exīstimantur, habent lēgibus sānctum, sī quis quid dē rē pūblicā ā finitimīs
 rūmōre aut fāmā accēperit, utī ad magistrātum dēferat nēve cum quō aliō
 commūnicet, 2. quod saepe hominēs temerariōs atque imperitōs falsīs
 rūmōribus terrerī et ad facinus impellī et dē summīs rēbus cōsiliū capere
 cognitum est. 3. Magistrātūs quae vīsa sunt occultant quaeque esse ex ūsū
 iūdicāverunt multitudinī prōdunt. Dē rē pūblicā nisi per cōnciliū loquī nōn
 concēditur.

administrō (1): to manage, direct; help, 3
aestimātiō, -tionis f.: valuation, assessment 1
animal, animalis n.: animal, 2
bonus, -a, -um: good, kind(ly), useful 2
cliens, -entis m.: client, dependent, 4
commodus, -a, -um: convenient, suitable, 2
communicō (1): share, impart, 4
comperiō, -ire, -perī, -pertum: find out, discover, 1
concēdō, -ere; go away, withdraw, yield, 2
conficiō, -ere: to exhaust, finish, 4
coniunctim: jointly, in common, 1
constō, -āre, -stiff: stand together, 2
cor, cordis n.: the heart, 1
cremō (1): burn, consumer by fire, 2
cultus, -ūs m.: culture, refinement, 2
dēcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum: depart, die, 4
diligō, -ere, -lexī, -lectum: to love, esteem, 1
dōs, dotis f.: dowry, gift, 2
excruciō (1): torture, torment, 1
facinus, facinoris n.: deed; bad deed, crime 2
falsus, -a, -um: wrong, mistaken, misled, 1
fāma, -ae f.: rumor, story, hearsay, 2
fructus, -ūs m.: profit, advantage, benefit, fruit, 2
fūnus, fūneris n.: funeral, burial; death, 2
ignis, ignis, m.: fire, 4

illustris, -e: bright, distinguished, 1
impellō, -ere, -pultī, -pulsus: drive, rouse 2
imperitus, a, um: unskilled, inexperienced, 2
iūdicō (1): judge, decide, assess, 2
iustus, -a, -um: just, fair, 1
lēx, lēgis f.: law, regulation, decree, 3
liberī, -ōrum m.: children, 2
loquor, -ī, locūtum: speak, say, 2
magistratus, -ūs m.: magistrate, officer, 3
magnificus, -a, -um: magnificent, splendid 1
memoria, -ae f.: memory, 4
modus, ī n.: manner, form; measure, 4
nascor, nascī, nātus sum: be born, grow, 3
nēvē: or not, and not, nor, 2
nex, necis f.: death, violent death, murder, 1
nōmen, nōminis n.: name, 2
occultō (1): hide, conceal, 3
paterfamiāas, -ae m.: paterfamilias, 1
pecūnia, -ae f.: money, 3
potestās, -tātis f.: power, ability, capacity, 3
prōdō, ere, didī, ditum: bring forth; betray 2
propinquus, -a, -um: near, close; *subst.* kinsman, 2
quaesitio, -tionis f.: investigation, inquiry, 1
rūmor, rūmoris f., -ae f.: rumor, hearsay, 2
saepe: often, 3

sanctus, -a, -um: consecrated, hallowed, 1
servīlis, -e: slavish, servile, of a slave, 1
servō (1): save, keep, preserve, 2
servus, -ī, m.: slave, 1
sicut: just as, so as, as if, 2
sumptuosus, -a, -um: sumptuous, expensive, 1
suprā: above, over, on the top, 3
suspicio, -ciōnis f.: mistrust, suspicion, 4

temerārius, -a, -um: rash, inconsiderate, 1
terreō, -ēre, terruī, territum: to terrify, 2
tormentum, -ī n.: missile-launcher, torture, 3
uter, ultra, utrum: each or one (of two), 2
uxor, ūxōris f.: wife, spouse, 3
vir, virī m.: man, 4
vīvus, -a, -um: living, alive, 2

-
- 1 **Virī:** *husbands*; an appropriate translation in light of the discussion of wives, *uxōrēs quantās...tantās:* *as much money...so much*; correlatives; relative and demonstrative respectively
dōtis nōmine: *in the name of a dowry*
ex suis...factā: ablative absolute
commūnicant: *contribute (an equal share)*; i.e. the husband makes a contribution matching the value of the dowry
- 2 **huius omnis pecūniae:** *of...;* objective gen. governed by *ratio*
- 3 **ratio habētur:** *an account is made*; “is held”
fructūs: *the profits*; nom., the word “usufruct” denotes a husband’s ability to enjoy the use and profits of a wife’s dowry as long as he does not diminish the original value of the dowry
uter eōrum vitā superāvit, ad eum: *which one of them has survived (the other) in life, to this one...;* abl. of respect; *eum*, though masculine, can apply to the surviving husband or wife
- 4 **pars utrīusque:** *the portion of each one*; i.e. the dowry and the husband’s contribution
superiōrum: *previous*; gen. pl. comparative
- 5 **in uxōrēs...in liberōs:** *toward...toward*
sīcūtī: alternative to *sicut*
- 6 **paterfamiliae:** *the paterfamilias*; nom. subject
illūstriōre locō: *in a more illustrious position*
nātus: pf. passive pple. *nascor*
dēcessit: *has died*; “departed,” a euphemism
- 7 **dē morte:** *concerning death*; modifies *rēs*
in servilem modum: *in the manner of slaves*; i.e. just as they investigate slaves after the death of a master, so a wife after the death of her husband
- 8 **compertum est:** *it is discovered*; incriminating evidence
ignī: i-stem abl. singular
- 9 **prō cultū:** *according to the culture*
- 10 **vīvīs cordī fuisse:** *to have been dear to the living*; *cordī* is a predicative dative commonly found with inf. of *sum*; *vīvīs* is dat. of interest
- 11 **paulō:** *a little*; abl. of degree of difference
suprā hanc memoriā: *before our time*; “before this (living) memory”
- 12 **constābat:** *it was agreed*; “it stood fixed”
ab eis: *by them*; i.e. by the dead
dīlectōs esse: pf. pass. inf.
iūstis fūneribus cōfectis: *the due funerals completed*; abl. absolute
ūnā: *together*; living burned with the dead
- 13 **quae civitatēs..exīstimantur:** *the cities which they consider to...*
commodius: *more advantageously*; comparative adverb
habent lēgibus sānctum...utī...: *have it ordained by laws...that*; *utī* (*ut*) introduces an indirect command with pres. subjunctive
- 14 **sī quis quid...accēperit:** *if anyone has received anything...;* *aliquis, aliquid* is a common indefinite pronoun (anyone, anything), but *quis, quid* is commonly used as an indefinite (who → anyone, what → anything) after *sī, nisi, num, and nē*. The mnemonic for this construction is the jingle “After *sī, nisi, num, and nē*, all the *ali*’s go away” (in other words indefinite *aliquid* becomes just *quid*); *accēperit* is pf. subj.
ā finitimis: *from neighbors, from those near*
- 15 **cum quō aliō:** *with anyone else*; see note l. 15
quod: *because*
- 16 **hominēs...terrēri...impelli...capere:** *that people...;* infs. are subject of *cognitum est*
- 17 **dē summīs rēbus:** *concerning the most important matters*
quae vīsa sunt: *(those things) which seemed best (to hide)*
quaeque...iūdicāverunt: *and (those things) which...;* missing antecedent is obj. of *produnt esse ex ūsū:* *is of use*; i.e. advantageous
- 19 **multitūdīni:** dat. indirect object
prōdunt: *bring forth*; in contrast to *occultant*
loquī: pres. deponent infinitive
- 20 **conceditur:** *it is allowed*; “it is yielded”

24.1 Subductīs nāvibus conciliōque Gallōrum Samarobrīvae perāctō, quod eō 1
 annō frūmentum in Galliā propter siccitatēs angustius prōvēnerat, coāctus
 est aliter ac superiōribus annīs exercitum in hibernīs collocāre legiōnēsque in
 plūrēs civitatēs distribuere; 2. ex quibus ūnam in Morinōs ducendam Gaiō
 Fabiō lēgātō dedit, alteram in Nerviōs Quintō Cicerōnī, tertiam in Esubiōs 5
 Lucio Rōsciō; quartam in Rēmīs cum Titō Labiēnō in confīniō Trēverōrum
 hiemāre iussit. Trēs in Belgīs collocāvit: 3. eīs Marcum Crassum quaestorem
 et Lucium Munātium Plancum et Gaium Trebōnium lēgātōs praefēcit. 4. Ūnam
 legiōnem, quam proximē trāns Padum cōnscrīpserat, et cohortēs V in 10
 Eburōnēs, quōrum pars maxima est inter Mosam ac Rhēnum, quī sub
 imperiō Ambiorīgis et Catuvolcī erant, mīsit. 5. Eīs mīlitibus Quintum
 Titūrium Sabīnum et Lucium Aurunculēium Cottam lēgātōs praeesse iussit.
 6. Ad hunc modum distribūtīs legiōnibus, facillimē inopiae frūmentāriae sēsē
 medērī posse exīstimāvit. 7. Atque hārum tamen omnium legiōnum hīberna
 praeter eam, quam Luciō Rōsciō in pācātissimam et quiētissimam partem 15
 dūcendam dederat, mīlibus passuum centum continēbantur. 8. Ipse intereā,
 quoad legiōnēs collocātās mūnītaque hīberna cōgnōvisset, in Galliā morārī
 cōstituit.

aliter: otherwise, 2

angustus, -a, -um: narrow, confined, 4

Aurunculeius, -ī m.: Aurunculeius, 2

Catūvolcus -ī m.: Catuvolcus, 2

centum: one hundred, 1

collocō (1): place together, arrange, set up, 4

confīnium, -ī n.: a confine, limit, border, 1

conscrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī: enlist, enroll, 2

distribūō, -ere, -buī, -būtum: divide up, 2

Ēsubiī, -ōrum m.: the Esubii, 1

Fabius, -ī m.: Fabius, 3

frūmentārius, -a, -um: full of grain, 2

Gaius, -ī m.: Gaius, 4

hiemō (1): spend the winter, 3

inopia, -ae f.: poverty, want (of), need, 1

intereā: meanwhile, meantime, 3

Marcus, -ī m.: Marcus, 1

medeor, -ērī: heal, cure; assist, alleviate (dat) 1

modus, ī n.: manner, form; measure, 4

Morini, -ōrum m.: Morini, 1

moror, -ārī, -ātus: delay, linger; detain, 3

Mosa, -ae f.: Mosa (Meuse) river, 1

Munātius, -ī m.: Munatius, 1

muniō, -ire, -ivī, -itum: to fortify, build, 3

pācātus, -a, -um: peaceful, quiet, 1

Padus, -ī m.: Padus (Po) river, 1

peragō, -ere, ēgī, actum: pass, go through, 1

Plancus, -ī m.: Plancus, 2

plūs (plūris): more, 4

praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum: set (acc) over (dat), put
(acc) in charge over (dat), 2

praesum, -esse, -fuī: be over, preside over (dat), 2

praeter: beyond, past (+ acc.), 2

prōveniō, -ire, -vēnī: come forward, grow 1

quaestor, -oris m.: quaestor, 3

quartus, -a, -um: the fourth, 2

quiētus, -a, -um: resting, calm, undisturbed 1

quoad: until, as far as, as long as, 1

Rēmī, -ōrum m.: Rheims (town), 1

Roscius, ī m.: Roscius, 2

Samarobrīva, -ae f.: Samarobriva (a town) 2

siccitās, -tātis f.: dryness, 1

subdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus: draw up,, 2

Titus, -ī m.: Titus, 4

trans; over, across (+ acc.), 3

Trebōnius, -ī m.: Trebonius, 1

Trēveri, -ōrum m.: Treveri (Germanic), 4

Background: Upon return from the second expedition to Britain, Caesar discovers that on account of drought the grain supply will be low for the winter. Since no one region can supply the grain for the army, Caesar distributes his forces into a number of smaller camps which, one assumes, can live off the grain in their particular region.

- 1 **Subductis nāvibus**: *the ships drawn up (on shore)*; sub- as a prefix often means “up from under,” the ships were driven onto the beach
cōnciliō...peractō: abl. absolute
Samarobrīvae: *at Samarobriva*; locative case
quod: because
- 2 **eō annō**: *on that...*; eō is demonstrative; abl. place where
angustus: *more limited, scarcer*; “narrower,” i.e. less grain, comparative adj. neut. sg. with frūmentum the subject of prōvēnerat
coactus est: *he was compelled*; pf. pass. cōgō
- 3 **aliter ac**: *otherwise than*; common translation of aliter with ac or atque
superiōribus: *in previous*; “higher” time when
hibernis: *winter-quarters*
- 4 **plūrēs**: acc. pl. plūs, comparative of multus
ex quibus: *from these*; “from which,” in a transition Caesar prefers a relative pronoun where English prefers a demonstrative
ūnam: *one (legion)*
in Morinōs: *among the Morini*
ducendam: *to be led*; “going to be led,” gerundive expressing purpose modifying ūnam and governing “in Morinōs”
Gaiō Fabiō...Rōsciō: dative indirect object
- 5 **dedit**: pf. dō, dare
alteram...tertiā: *another (legion)...a third (legion)...*; parallel to “ūnam...dedit,” supply to each clause “ducendam” and “dedit” which are missing through ellipsis (omission)
- 6 **quartam**: *the fourth (legion)*
- 7 **Trēs**: *three (legions)*
- eīs**: *over them*; dat. with compound praefēcit
- 8 **praefēcit**: *put (acc) in charge of (dat)*
- 9 **proximē**: *very recently*; “nearest (in time) superlative adverb
- 10 **quōrum**: *of which*; partitive genitive
- 11 **Eīs**: *over them*; dat. with compound praesesse
- 12 **Quintum...lēgātōs**: acc. subject of praesesse
- 13 **Ad hunc modum**: *in this manner*; “according to this manner” part of the ablative absolute distribūtis legiōnibus
inopiae...medēri: *to alleviate the need*; dat. object of dep. medeor
- sēsē**: *that he...*; reflexive acc. subject of posse
- 15 **praeter eam, quam**: *except that (legion) which...*;
Luciō Rōsciō: dat. i.o. of dederat, plpf. dō
In...partem: *into...part (of Gallia)*
pācātissimam, quiētissimam: superlatives
- 16 **ducendum**: *to be led*; “going to be led,” gerundive expressing purpose modifying quam (legiōnem) and governing “in...partem”
mīlibus...centum: *by 100 miles*; “by 100 thousand of paces”
continēbantur: hiberna is the neut. pl. subject
- 17 **quoad...cōgnōvisset**: *until he had learned*; plpf. subjunctive; i.e. he delayed in Gaul until he had learned all had been arranged
legiōnēs collocātās (esse): *that the legions...*; ind. discourse, supply esse for pf. pass. inf.
hiberna mūnita (esse): *that winter-quarters*; ind. discourse, supply esse for pf. pass. inf.
morārī: present deponent inf. moror

Command in the Winter-Quarters

The highest officer in the Roman Army was the **dux**, general. When a Roman dux won an important victory, he might be given the title **imperātor**, commander, by his own men. The officers who ranked immediately below the dux and were selected by him to lead a single legion were called **legātī**, a word that means “the commissioned” but is often translated as lieutenant-generals or more commonly legates. This word “legātus” is also used to describe envoys commissioned to convey information on behalf of the dux or senate, so readers should be careful to distinguish a legātus who leads a legion from a legātus who carries news, for example, from Caesar to his allies.

In the passage above, Caesar assigns a legion to each of a number of legātī who will play a role in the events that follow in Book V: **Gaius Fabius**, **Quintus Cicero**, brother of the famous orator, **Lucius Roscius**, **Titus Labienus**, **Lucius Munatius Plancus**, **Gaius Trebonius**, **Quintus Titūrius Sabinus** and **Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta**. In order to possess *imperium*, the power to command, these legates had to have been elected by the Centuriate Assembly in Rome at some point in the past to the office of praetor or consul. All the legates, therefore, were members of the senatorial class.

In addition to the legates, Caesar appointed a legion in winter-quarters to the **quaestor** Marcus Crassus, son of the wealthy M. Licinius Crassus. Elected by Rome’s Tribal Assembly, quaestors were financial officers. On a military campaign, a quaestor would be chosen by the dux from among the elected quaestors and was responsible for distributing soldiers’ pay and procuring supplies.

25.1 Erat in Carnūtibus summō locō nātus Tasgetius, cuius māiōrēs in suā 1
 civitāte regnum obtinuerant. 2. Huic Caesar prō eius virtūte atque in sē
 benevolentīā, quod in omnibus bellīs singulārī eius operā fuerat ūsus,
 maiōrum locum restituerat. 3. Tertium iam hunc annum regnantem inimicī,
 multīs palam ex civitāte eius auctōribus, eum interfēcērunt. 4. Defertur ea rēs 5
 ad Caesarem. Ille veritus, quod ad plūrēs pertinēbat, nē cīvitās eōrum impulsū
 dēficeret, Lucium Plancum cum legiōne ex Belgiō celeriter in Carnūtēs
 proficiscī iubet ibique hiemāre quōrumque operā cognōverat Tasgetium
 interfectum, hōs comprehēnsōs ad sē mittere. 5. Interim ab omnibus lēgātīs
 quaestōreque, quibus legiōnēs trādiderat, certior factus est in hīberna 10
 perventum locumque hībernīs esse mūnītum.

26.1 Diēbus circiter XV, quibus in hīberna ventum est, initium repentīnī
 tumultūs ac dēfectiōnis ortum est ab Ambiorīge et Catuvolcō; 2. quī, cum ad
 finēs regnī suī Sabīnō Cottaēque praestō fuissent frūmentumque in hīberna
 comportāvissent, Indūtiomārī Trēverī nūntiīs impulsī, suōs concitāvērunt 15
 subitōque oppressīs lignātōribus magnā manū ad castra oppugnātum
 vērunt. 3. Cum celeriter nostrī arma cepissent vallumque adscendissent
 atque unā ex parte Hispānīs equitibus ēmissīs equestrī proeliō superiōrēs
 fuissent, dēspērātā rē hostēs suōs ab oppugnātiōne redūxērunt.

ascendō, -ere, -ī, -ēnsus: ascend, mount 2
auctor, auctoris m.: agent, doer, cause, 4
Belgium -ī n.: Belgium (part of Belgae), 2
benevolentia, -ae, f.: goodwill, kindness, 1
Carnūtēs, -um: Carnutes, 4
Catūvolcus -ī m.: Catuvolcus, 2
comportō (1): carry together, collect, 3
comprehendō, -ere, -dī: seize, arrest; grasp 4
concitō (1): stir up, incite, impel, 2
dēfectio, -tiōnis f.: rebellion, defection, 1
dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum: fail, give out, 3
dēspērō (1): to have no hope, give up, 2
ēmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum: send away 1
equester, -stris, -stre: equestrian, 1
hiemō (1): spend the winter, 3
Hispānī, -ōrum m.: Spaniard, 1
iam: now, already, soon, 4
impellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus: drive, rouse 2
impulsus, -ūs m.: incitement, pressure, 1
Indūtiomārus, -ī m.: (chief of Treveri), 1
inimicus, -a, -um: hostile, unfriendly, 4
lignātor, -ōris m.: wood-cutter, 1

muniō, -īre, -ivī, -itum: to fortify, build, 3
nascor, nascī, nātus sum: be born, grow, 3
opera, operae f.: service, hard work, effort, 3
opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum: crush,
 burden, overwhelm, 3
orior, -īrī, ortus: arise, rise, spring, 3
palam: openly, publicly, 2
Plancus, -ī m.: Plancus, 2
plūs (plūris): more, 4
praestō: at hand, present, at the service of (dat) 1
quaestor, -oris m.: quaestor, 3
redūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus: to bring back, 3
regnō (1): to reign, rule as a king, 1
repentīnus, -a, -um: sudden, unexpected, 4
restituō, -ere, -stitūī, -ductus: to restore, replace, 1
singulāris, -e: single, individual, alone, 2
Tasgetius, -ī m.: Tasgetius, 3
trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditum: to give over,
 hand down, pass down, 3
Trēveri, -ōrum m.: Treveri (Germanic), 4
tumultus, -ūs m.: uproar, tumult, confusion, 1
vereor, -ērī, -itus: be afraid, fear; revere, 4

- 1 **erat...nātus**: plpf. nascor
in Carnūtibus: *among the Carnutes*
summō locō: *in the highest position*; i.e. status, abl. of quality
cuīus: gen. sg. quī, quae, quod
māiōrēs: *ancestors*; “greater (in birth),” comparative adj. of magnus, nom. subject
suā: *their*; possessive reflexive adjective
- 2 **Huic**: *to this one*; dat. i.o. of restituerat
prō virtūtē...benevolentīā: *(in return) for...*
eius: *his*; i.e. Tasgetius’
in sē: *toward him*; i.e. toward Caesar
- 3 **singulārī eius operā fuerat ūsus**: *there had been a need for his singular service*; ūsus est (here plpf.) just as opus est is idiomatic for “there is a need for” and governs an ablative, singulārī is i-stem 3rd decl. abl. with operā, which is 1st decl. and not from opus, operis
- 4 **māiōrum**: *of his ancestors*; see line 1
Tertium...annum: *for...*; acc. of duration
inimicī: nom. pl. subject
- 5 **multīs palam...auctōribus**: *many openly (being) promoters...*; abl. absolute, subject and pred., supply the missing pple “being”
ea: *this*; demonstrative adj. with fem. sg. rēs
- 6 **veritus**: *having begun to fear*; inceptive pf. dep. pple vereor
quod...pertinēbat: *because...*; i.e. the murder was not limited to one murderer but many
nē...dēficeret: *that...*; nē is translated positively in this clause of fearing; impf. subj. in secondary seq. governed by veritus
- 7 **impulsū**: *because of their incitement*; “by the incitement” abl. of cause
Lucium Plancum: acc. subject of proficisī, hiemāre, and mittere, all governed by iubet
- 8 **quōrumque operā...hōs**: *and these by whose effort...*; the antecedent of the relative clause quōrum...interfectum comes after the clause; operā, as in line 3, is 1st decl. abl. sg.
- 9 **interfectum (esse)**: pf. pass. inf. in indirect disc. with Tasgetium as acc. subject
comprehēnsōs: *arrested*
- 10 **certior factus est**: *he was informed*; “he was made more certain,” a common idiom, certior is a comparative adjective, predicate nom.; this construction governs indirect discourse
- 10 **perventum (esse)**: *that they had arrived*; this pf. passive infinitive in ind. disc. is impersonal: “it has been arrived (by them)...” with the legates and quaestor as assumed agents; in translation, translate the pf. pass. as pf. active
- 11 **locum...mūnītum esse**: *that their positions were fortified*; plural, though each legate may have informed Caesar about his single position, there were collectively many different winter-camps set up
hibernīs: *for winter-quarters*; dat. of purpose
- 12 **Diēbus...XV**: *within...*; abl. of time within
quibus: *in which (days)*; abl. of time within
ventum est: *they came*; “it has been come,” impersonal passive
repentīnī...dēfectiōnis: subjective gen. of initium, which is nom. subj.
- 13 **ortum est**: pf. deponent orior
ab: *from...*; abl. of origin, not abl. of agent
- 14 **regnī suī**: *of their kingdom*; gen. sg.
praestō fuissent: *had been at hand for*; + dat. praestō is an adv. commonly found with a form of sum, here plpf. subj. in a cum-clause
- 15 **Indūtiomārī Trēverī**: *of Indutiomarus, one of the Treveri*; “of the Treverian Indutiomarus,” both are gen. sg. modifying abl. pl. nuntiīs
impulsī: *having been incited*; nom. pl. modifies quī and governs preceding 3 words
suōs: *their own (men)*
- 16 **subitō...lignātōribus**: abl. abs.
magnā manū: *with a large body (of men)*; abl. of means
oppugnātum: *to assault*; “to capture by assault,” supine in acc. sg. expresses purpose and may be translated as an infinitive
- 17 **nostrī**: *our (men)*
cēpissent: plpf. subj. capiō
- 18 **ūnā ex parte**: *on one side*; “from one side”
Hispānīs...ēmissīs: abl. absolute
equestrī proeliō: *in an equestrian battle*; i-stem 3rd decl. adjective in abl. sg.
superiōrēs: nom. pred. of plpf. subj. of sum
- 19 **dēsperātā rē**: abl. absolute
hostēs: nom. subj.
suōs: *their (men)*
ab: *from...*; abl. of separation

Quintus Titūrius Sabīnus and Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta.

Caesar commonly calls the first legate by the cognomen **Sabīnus** (line 14) or nomen **Titūrius**. Keep in mind that these names identify one and the same person. In V.27.1, the same legatus is called Quintus Titūrius. Caesar identifies the second legate, Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta, almost always by the cognomen **Cotta**.

26.4 Tum suō mōre conclāmāvērunt utī aliquī ex nostrīs ad colloquium 1
 prōdīret: habēre sēsē, quae dē rē commūnī dicere vellent, quibus rēbus
 contrōversiās minuī posse spērārent.

27.1 Mittitur ad eōs colloquendī causā Gaius Arpīnēius, eques Rōmānus, 5
 familiāris Quintī Titūrī, et Quintus Iūnius ex Hispāniā quīdam, quī iam ante
 missū Caesaris ad Ambiorīgem ventitāre cōnsuērat; apud quōs Ambiorīx ad
 hunc modum locūtus est: 2. sēsē prō Caesaris in sē beneficiīs plūrimum eī
 cōnfītērī debēre, quod eius operā stīpendiō liberātus esset, quod Aduatucīs,
 fīnitimīs suīs, pendere cōnsuēsset, quodque eī et filius et fratris filius ab
 Caesare remissī essent, quōs Aduatucī obsidum numerō missōs apud sē in 10
 servitūte et catēnīs tenuissent; 3. neque id, quod fēcerit de oppugnātiōne
 castrōrum, aut iūdicīō aut voluntāte suā fēcisse, sed coāctū civitātis, suaque
 esse eiusmodī imperia, ut nōn minus habēret iūris in sē multitudō quam ipse
 in multitudīnem. 4. Cīvitātī porrō hanc fuisse bellī causam, quod repentināe
 Gallōrum coniūrātiōnī resistere nōn potuerit. Id sē facile ex humilitāte suā 15
 probāre posse, quod nōn adeō sit imperītus rērum ut suīs copiīs populum
 Rōmānum superārī posse cōnfīdat. 5. Sed esse Galliae commūne cōnsilium:
 omnibus hibernīs Caesaris oppugnandis hunc esse dictum diem, nē qua legiō
 alterae legiōnī subsidiō venīre posset; 6. nōn facile Gallōs Gallīs negāre
 potuisse, praesertim cum dē recuperandā commūnī libertāte cōnsilium 20
 inītum vidērētur.

adeō: to such a degree, such an extent, so, 1
ante: before, in front of (acc); *adv.* before, 4
Arpineius, -ī m.: Arpineius, 2
beneficium, -ī n.: favor, benefit, kindness, 2
catena, -ae f.: chain, fetter, shackle, 1
coactus, -ūs m.: compulsion, coercion, 1
colloquium, -iī n.: conversation, talk, 1
colloquor, -quī, -locūtum: to converse, 4
conclamō (1): cry out together, shout, 2
confidō, -ere, confisus sum: trust, believe, rely upon, 4
confiteor, -ērī, -fessum: admit, reveal, 1
coniūratiō, -ōnis f.: pact, union, conspiracy 3
dēbeō, -ēre, dēbuī, dēbitum: ought, owe 1
eiusmodī: of this kind, such; so, 3
familiāris, -e: of the family; close friend, 1
frāter, -tris m.: brother, 2
Gaius, -ī m.: Gaius, 4
Hispania, -ae f.: Spain, 2
humilitās, -tātis f.: weakness, lowliness, 1
iam: now, already, soon, 4
imperītus, a, um: unskilled, inexperienced (gen), 2
iudicium, -ī n.: decision, judgment; trial, 3
Iūnius, -ī m.: Junius, 2

iūs, iūris n.: justice, law, right, 2
liberō (1): free, liberate, 3
libertās, -tātis f.: freedom, liberation, 2
loquor, -ī, locūtum: speak, say, 2
minuō, -ere, minuī: diminish, ebb, 2
missus, -ūs m.: a sending, launching, 1
modus, ī n.: manner, form; measure, 4
mōs, mōris m.: custom, manner, law, 4
negō (1): to deny, say that...not, 2
opera, operae f.: service, hard work, effort, 3
pendō, -ere, pependī, pensum: pay, weigh 2
plūrimus, -a, -um: most, very many, 4
porrō: furthermore, further; long ago, far back, 1
praesertim: especially, particularly, 2
prōdeō, -īre, -iī, -itum: advance, go forth, 1
quīdam, quaedam, quiddam: a certain, 4
recuperō (1): gain again, regain, recover, 1
remittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum: send back, 4
repentinus, -a, -um: sudden, unexpected, 4
servitūs, servitūtis, f.: servitude, 2
stīpendium, -iī n.: payment, tribute; military service, 1
ventitō (1): to come often, resort to, 2
voluntās, -tātis f.: will, wish, choice, 2

- 1 **suō mōre**: *according to their custom*; cf. I.4.1
utī aliquī...prōdiret: *that someone go forth*; ut + impf. subj. prōdeō in an ind. command; aliquī is a nom. sg. indefinite adj., alternate to aliquis
nostrīs: *our (men)*
ad: *for...*; expressing purpose
- 2 **habēre sēsē**: *(and) that they had...*; either ind. discourse governed by conclāmāvērunt just as the ind. command or governed by a missing verb of speech: “(stating) that they had”
quae...vellent: *(things) which they wanted*; impf. subj. volō in a subordinate clause in ind. disc.; the missing antecedent is obj. of habēre
dē rē commūnī: *about their common interests*; “about common affairs”
quibus rēbus: *by which things*; abl. of means
- 3 **contrōversīās**: acc. subject of inf. posse
minuī: pres. passive inf.
spērārent: impf. subj., same as vellent above
- 4 **colloquendī**: *of discussing*; gerund, gen. obj. of causā
eques: in apposition to Arpineius; Arpineius was an equestrian in rank, the term “eques” refers to his rank in society rather than his occupation as a horseman
- 5 **familiāris**: *a close friend*; nom. appositive
iam ante: *already before*
- 6 **missū**: *at Caesar’s sending*; “by the sending of Caesar,” Caesar is a subjective gen.; abl. cause
ventitāre: *to come often*; frequentative of veniō
apud quōs: *among these*; i.e. to these men; English prefers a demonstrative to the relative
ad hunc modum: *in this manner*; “according to this manner”
- 7 **locūtus est**: pf. deponent, loquor
sēsē...cōnfītērī debēre: *that he confessed to owe*; not “ought to confess,” cōnfītērī is a dep. inf. in ind. discourse that extends at length through quod-clauses to tenuissent; in ind. disc. subordinate verbs not already subjunctive are made subjunctive
prō...beneficiīs: *(in return) for...*; prō + abl.
plūrimum eī: acc. object and dat. i.o. of debēre
- 8 **quod...liberātus esset**: *because...*; plpf. subj. Ambiorix lists the reasons he is indebted to Caesar; the verbs are subj. because subordinate verbs in ind. disc. are commonly subjunctive
stīpendiō: *from...*; abl. of separation
quod...cōnsuē(vi)sset: *which he had been accustomed*; plpf. subj., subordinate verb in ind. disc.; the antecedent is neuter stīpendiō
- 9 **quodque...remissī essent**: *and because...*; plpf. pass. subj., remittō, subordinate verbs in ind. discourse become subjunctive
eī: *to him*; i.e. to Ambiorix, dat. indirect object
- 10 **quōs...tenuissent**: *whom...*; relative clause of characteristic, here with plpf. subj. teneō
obsidum numerō: *in a group of hostages*; abl. place where or accompaniment
apud sē: *among them*; i.e. among the Aduatuci
- 11 **neque id...fēcisse**: *and that (he) had not done it*; ind. discourse parallel to cōnfītērī in l. 8, reflexive sēsē in l. 7 is acc. subject; “id” is acc. d.o. and refers to Ambiorix’s assault
quod fēcirit: *which...*; relative clause of characteristic with perfect subj. faciō
- 12 **iūdiō (suō), voluntāte suā**: abl. cause
coāctū civitātis: *by the compulsion of the state*; abl. of cause
suaque...imperia, ut: *and that his powers were of such a kind that...*; a result clause with impf. subj. in secondary sequence follows
- 13 **nōn minus...iūris...quam ipse**: *no less (of) authority...than he himself (had)*; minus is comparative adj. neut. acc. d.o., iūris is a partitive gen.; supply habēret after ipse
in: *over*
- 14 **civitātī...hanc fuisse...**: *that to the state this...*; ind. discourse, hanc is acc. subj. with pf. inf. of sum; civitātī is a dat. of reference, i.e. from the viewpoint of the state
quod...potuerit: *(namely) because...*; pf. subj. of possum, subjunctive because it is a subordinate verb in ind. discourse; the verb in direct disc. is subjunctive for alleged cause, the subject of potuerit is a missing civitās
- 15 **coniūrātiōnī**: dat. obj. of resistere
Id sē...posse: *that he is able...*; ind. disc., id is acc. d.o. of probāre, sē is acc. subject
facile: adverb of 3rd decl. facilis, facile
- 16 **quod...rērum**: *because...*
sit: *he is*; Ambiorix is nom. subject
ut...cōnfidat: *that...*; result clause, pres. subj.
suīs copiīs: abl. means; Ambiorix’s troops
populum Rōmānum: acc. subject of posse
- 17 **sed esse**: *but that it is...*;
- 18 **omnibus...oppugnandīs**: *for assaulting...*; dat. purpose, employ a gerund-gerundive flip
dictum diem: *the appointed day*; PPP dīcō
nē...posset: *lest any legion...*; purpose clause
- 19 **alterae legiōnī subsidiō**: double dative (dat. of interest and dat. of purpose respectively)
Gallōs...potuisse: *Gauls could not deny Gauls*
- 20 **cum...vidērētur**: *since...seemed*
- 21 **dē recuperandā...**: gerund-gerundive flip
initum (esse): *to have been entered*; pf. inf.

27.7 Quibus quoniam prō pietāte satisfēcerit, habēre nunc sē ratiōnem officī 1
 prō beneficiīs Caesaris: monēre, ōrāre Titūrium prō hospitiō, ut suae ac
 mīlitum salūtī cōsulat. 8. Magnam manum Germānōrum conductam
 Rhēnum trānsisse; hanc adfore bīduō. 9. Ipsōrum esse cōnsilium velintne
 priusquam finitimī sentiant ēductōs ex hibernīs mīlitēs aut ad Cicerōnem aut 5
 ad Labiēnum dēducere, quōrum alter mīlia passuum circiter quinquaginta,
 alter paulō amplius ab eīs absit. 10. Illud sē pollicērī et iūreiūrandō cōfirmāre
 tūtum iter per finēs datūrum; 11. quod cum faciat, et cīvitātī sēsē cōsulere,
 quod hibernīs levētur, et Caesarī prō eius meritīs grātiam referre. Hāc
 ōrātiōne habitā discēdit Ambiorīx. 10

28.1 Arpinēius et Iūnius, quae audierunt, ad lēgātōs dēferunt. Illī repentīnā
 rē perturbātī, etsi ab hoste ea dīcēbantur, tamen nōn neglegenda
 exīstimābant maximēque hāc rē permovēbantur, quod cīvitātem ignōbilem
 atque humilem Eburōnum suā sponte populō Rōmānō bellum facere ausam
 vix erat crēdendum. 2. Itaque ad cōnsilium rem dēferunt magnaue inter eōs 15
 existit contrōversia. 3. Lucius Aurunculēius complūrēsque tribūnī mīlitum et
 prīmōrum ōrdinum centuriōnēs nihil temerē agendum neque ex hibernīs
 iniūssū Caesaris discēdendum exīstimābant: quantāsvīs magnās etiam cōpiās
 Germānōrum sustinērī posse mūnītīs hibernīs docēbant: rem esse testimōniō,
 quod prīmum hostium impetum multīs ultrō vulneribus illātis fortissimē 20
 sustinuerint: rē frumentāriā non premī; intereā et ex proximīs hibernīs et ā
 Caesare conventūra subsidia: postrēmō quid esse levius aut turpius quam,
 auctōre hoste, dē summīs rēbus capere cōnsilium?

adsum, -esse, -fuī: be present, assist, (dat.), 3
agō, agere, ēgi, āctum: drive, lead, do, 4
amplius, -a, -um: ample, full, spacious, 2
Arpineius, -ī m.: Arpineius, 2
auctor, auctoris m.: agent, doer, cause, 4
audeō, -ēre, ausus sum: dare, venture, 4
audiō, -īre, -īvī, auditum: to hear, listen to, 1
Aurunculeius, -ī m.: Aurunculeius, 2
beneficium, -ī n.: favor, benefit, kindness, 2
biduum, -ī n.: a period of two days, 2
centurio, -iōnis m.: centurion, 4
condūcō, -ere: bring together, gather, 2
cōsulō, -ere, -sulū, sultum: consult, consider, 3
credō, -ere, -didī, creditum: believe, trust 1
dēducō, -ere: lead or draw down or away, 3
discō, -ere, -didicī: learn, get to know, 2
doceō, -ere, -uī, -ctus: teach, tell, 4
ēducō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus: lead out, 3
existō, -ere, -stīfī, -stītum: arise, appear, 1
frūmentārius, -a, -um: full of grain, 2
grātia, -ae f.: gratitude; favor, thanks, 2

hospitium, -ī n.: hospitality; guest-host tie, 1
humilis, -e: on the ground, low; humble, 1
ignōbilis, -e: ignoble, obscure, unknown, 1
impetus, -ūs m.: attack, onset, assault, 7
iniussū: without orders, 1
intereā: meanwhile, meantime, 3
Iūnius, -ī m.: Junius, 2
ius-iūrandum, iūrisiūrāndī n.: sworn oath, 2
levīs, -e: light, not heavy; unimportant, 1
levō (1): lift up, relieve; make smooth, 1
meritum, -ī n.: service, merit, favor, 1
moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum: to warn, advise, 2
muniō, -īre, -īvī, -itum: to fortify, build, 3
-ne: whether (opens yes/no question), 1
neglegō, ere, -lēxī, neglēctum: to neglect, 3
nunc: now, at present, 2
officium, -iī, n.: duty, obligation, 3
ōrō (1): plead, pray (for), entreat, 2
pietās, -tātis f.: piety, devotion, 1
polliceor, -cērī, -citus: promise, offer, 2
postremō,: *at last, finally*; abl. as adv. 2

priusquam: before, earlier than, 1
quantusvis, -avis, -umvis: however much, 1
quinquaginta: fifty, 1
quoniam: since, inasmuch as, seeing that, 1
referō, ferre, tulī, lātum: report, bring back, 3
repentīnus, -a, -um: sudden, unexpected, 4
satisfaciō, -ere, fēcī, factum: to do enough 1
sentiō, -ire, -sī, sēsum: to realize, feel, 3

sponte: willingly, voluntarily, 2
temere: heedlessly, blindly, without cause, 1
testimonium, -i n.: witness, testimony, 1
tribūnus, -i m.: tribune, officer, 2
turpis, turpe: ugly, shameful, 2
ultrō: voluntarily; moreover, beyond, 3
vix: with difficulty, with effort, scarcely, 2
vulnus, -eris n.: wound, blow, 3

-
- 1 **quibus...satisfecerit**: *Since he accomplished enough for these*; pf. subjunctive satisfaciō, use a demonstrative instead of relative pronoun
prō pietāte: *out of devotion*; i.e. patriotism
habere...sē: *he had*
rationem officī: *a regard for his duty*; “a calculation for,” objective genitive
- 2 **prō**: (*in return*) for...; + ablative
manēre, orāre...hospitiō: (*he said*) *that he advised (and) that he pleaded with Titūrius on behalf of hospitality*; asyndeton, Ambiorix said
ut...cōsulat: *that...*; ind. command with pres. subj. governed by monēre and orāre
- 3 **salūtī**: *for his own and the soldiers' safety*; dat. of purpose, suae is a possessive adj. agreeing with salūtī while militum is a gen. plural
manum: *body*; i.e. group, acc. subject
- 4 **trānsisse**: pf. inf. trānsēō in ind. discourse
hanc: *this (body)*; supply manum, acc. subject
adfore: *would be present*; alternative to the fut. inf. of adsum: adfutūrum esse
bīduō: *in...*; abl. of time within
Ipsōrum...cōsiliū, velintne: *that it is the consideration (of the Romans) themselves whether they are willing...*; ind. question with the pres. subjunctive of volō
- 5 **priusquam...sentiant**: i.e. before the Gauls find out
ēductōs...militēs: acc. d.o. of dēducere
- 6 **dēducere**: complementary inf. of velint
quōrum alter...alter: *of whom one...the other*; i.e. Cicero and Labiēnus; partitive genitive
mīlia passuum: *for...miles*; “thousands of paces,” acc. of extent; add “ab eīs absit”
- 7 **paulō**: *a little*; “by a little,” abl. of degree of difference with comparative adv. of amplius
ab eīs: *from them*; i.e. from Titūrius' troops
absit: *is away*; pres. subj. subordinate verb in indirect discourse
Illud...tūtum iter...datūrum (esse): *that... (namely) that (he)*; illud is acc. d.o. of pollicērī and cōfirmāre, “tūtum...datūrum (esse)” is in apposition to illud; datūrum esse is fut. inf. dō
- sē pollicērī**: *that he promised...*; deponent inf.
iūre-iūrandō: often as two words; abl. means
- 8 **quod**: *this*; i.e. removing Titūrius' troops and advising Titūrius on flight; translate the relative as a demonstrative, acc. object of faciat
et...et: *both...and*
- 9 **et cīvītātī sēsē cōsulere**: *both that he was consulting the state*; cīvītātī is dat. obj.
quod hibernīs levētur: *because (the state) is relieved from the winter-quarters*; i.e. from supplying the Romans with grain for winter
et...referre: *and he returned...*; Ambiorix is able to be loyal to the Gauls and to Caesar
- 10 **Hāc...habitā**: abl. absolute
quae: *the things (which)*; or “what,” the missing antecedent is obj. of dēferunt
audī(v)erunt: syncopated pf. 3rd pl.
- 11 **etsī**: *even if, although*; the clause is concessive
ea: *they*; “those things,” neuter plural
- 12 **(ea) nōn neglegenda (esse)**: *that they must not be neglected*; passive periphrastic (gerundive + sum); supply esse to form the infinitive
- 13 **suā sponte**: *by its own will*
- 14 **populō Rōmānō**: (*against*) *the Roman people*
ausam (esse): *had dared*; pf. deponent inf. of semi-deponent audeō, audēre, ausus sum; the acc. subj. is fem. cīvītātem
- 15 **erat crēdendum**: *was to be believed*; the subj. is “cīvītātem...ausam (esse);” passive periphrastic (gerundive + sum) as in line 12
cōsiliū: *council*; i.e. discussion in assembly
- 17 **nihil...agendum (esse)**: passive periphrastic, see note for line 15 above
discedendum (esse): *that (they) must not depart*; “it must not be departed,” see line 12
- 19 **rem esse testimōniō**: *that the matter served as evidence*; “was for evidence” dat. of purpose
- 20 **quod**: *namely because...*; in apposition to rem
- 21 **rē frūmentāriā**: *by the grain supply*; means
- 22 **conventūra (esse)**: *would convene*; fut. inf.
- 23 **turpius**: *more shameful than...*; comparison
auctōre hoste: *enemy being author*; absolute
capere cōsiliū: *to adopt a plan*; idiom

29.1 Contrā ea Titūrius sērō factūrōs clāmitābat, cum māiōrēs manūs 1
 hostium adiūctīs Germānīs convēnissent, aut cum aliquid calamitātis in
 proximīs hībernīs esset acceptum. Brevem cōsulendī esse occāsionem.
 Caesarem arbitrārī profectum in Ītaliā; 2. neque aliter Carnūtēs interficiendī
 Tasgetī cōsiliū fuisse captūrōs, neque Eburōnēs, sī ille adesset, tantā 5
 contemptiōne nostrī ad castra ventūrōs esse. 3. Nōn hostem auctōrem, sed
 rem spectāre: subesse Rhēnum; magnō esse Germānīs dolōrī Ariovistī
 mortem et superiōrēs nostrās victōriās; 4. ārdere Galliam, tot contumēliīs
 acceptīs sub populī Rōmānī imperiū redāctam, superiōre glōriā reī mīlītāris
 exstīctā. 5. Postrēmō quis hoc sibi persuādēret, sine certā rē Ambiorīgem ad 10
 eiusmodī cōsiliū dēscendisse? 6. Suam sententiam in utramque partem
 esse tūtā: sī nihil esset dūrius, nūllō cum perīculō ad proximam legiōnem
 perventūrōs; sī Gallia omnis cum Germānīs cōsentīret, ūnam esse in
 celeritāte positā salutē. 7. Cottae quidem atque eōrum, quī dissentīrent,
 cōsiliū quem habēre exitū, in quō sī praesēns perīculum nōn, at certē 15
 longinquā obsidiōne famēs esset timenda?

adiungō, -ere, iunxī, iunctum: join, attach, 1
adsum, -esse, -fuī: be present, assist, (dat.), 3
aliter: otherwise, 2
ardeō, -ēre, arsi, arsum: burn, be eager, 1
Ariovistus, -ī m.: (leader of the Germans) 1
auctor, auctoris m.: agent, doer, cause, 4
brevis, -e: short, 3
Carnūtēs, -um: Carnutes, 4
clāmitō (1): to cry violently or repeatedly, 1
consentiō, -īre, sensī: to agree, assent, 1
cōsulō, -ere, -suluī, sultum: consult, 3
contemptio, -tiōnis f.: scorn, disdain, 1
contrā: opposite, facing (acc.), 2
contumēlia, -ae f.: outrage, insult; violence, 1
dēscendō, -ere, -ī, -ēsus: descend, 1
dissentiō, -īre, sensī: to disagree, oppose, 1
dolor, -ōris m.: pain, grief, anger, passion, 2
dūrus, -a, -um: hard(y), harsh, stern, 1
eiusmodī: of this kind, such; so, 3
exitus, -ūs m.: going out, exit, result, issue, 1

extinguō, -ere, -stinxī, -stinctum: put out,
 snuff out, extinguish, 1
famēs, -is f.: hunger, 2
glōria, -ae, f.: glory, fame, 2
Ītalia, -ae f.: Italy, 1
longinquus, -a, -um; far, distant, remote, 2
militāris, -e: military, of a soldier, 1
obsidio, -iōnis f.: seige, blockade, 2
occāsio, -iōnis f.: opportunity, occasion, 2
postremō,: *at last, finally*; abl. as adv. 2
praesēns, -ntis: present, instant, 1
redigō, -ere, -ēgī, -actum: to bring back, 1
sententia, -ae f.: opinion, purpose, 2
sērō: late, too late, 1
spectō (1): watch, observe, behold, inspect, 3
subsum, -esse, -fuī: to be near, close at hand, 1
Tasgetius, -ī m.: Tasgetius, 3
timeō, -ēre, timuī: to be afraid, be scared, 1
tot: so many, 2

- 1 **contrā ea:** *in reply to these things*; “against
clāmitābat: *kept shouting*; frequentative impf.
sērō factūrōs (esse): *that (the Romans)*
would...; ind. disc. with fut. inf., add acc. subj.
cum...convēnissent: *after...;* plpf. subjunctive
māiōrēs: comp. adj. of magnus with manūs
manūs: *bodies*; i.e. groups of troops, nom. pl.
- 2 **adiūctīs Germānīs:** abl. absolute
cum...esset acceptum: *after...;* plpf. pass.
aliquid calamitātīs: *some calamity*; neut. nom. subject; “something of calamity”
- 3 **Brevem...occāsiōnem:** *that...;* occāsiōnem is acc. subj. but the predicate brevem is placed first in the clause for emphasis
cōnsulendī: gerund (-ing), with occāsiōnem
- 4 **arbitārī:** *that (he) thought*; add sē (Titūrius) as acc. subject; pres. dep. inf. of arbitror
Caesarem...profectum (esse): *that Caesar*;
pf. dep. inf. proficīscor, governed by arbitrarī
- 5 **interficiendī Tasgetī:** *of killing Tasgetius*; gen. sg. gerundive modifying gen. Tasgetius, which through a gerund-gerundive flip is translated as a gerund and acc. object
cōnsilium...captūrōs: cōnsilium capere is an idiom: “to adopt an argument”
fuisse captūrōs: *would have adopted*; pf. inf. sum + fut. pple capiō; in direct discourse this would be cēpissent, an apodosis in a mixed contrary-to-fact condition; parallel with ventūrōs esse, it complementing the protasis
sī...adesset below; see page 61
neque Eburōnēs: acc. subj. with ventūrōs esse
- 6 **sī...adesset:** *if that one were present*; i.e. Caesar, impf. subjunctive adsum, in direct disc. a protasis in a mixed contrary-to-fact condition with fuisse captūrōs and ventūrōs esse; cf. p. 61
nostrī: *for us*; nostrī is gen. sg. of the personal pronoun nōs; this gen. is an objective gen. modifying contemptiōne
ventūrōs esse: *would come*; fut. inf. (fut. pple + inf. of sum); in direct discourse it would be venīrent, an apodosis in a pres. contrary-to-fact condition with sī...adesset above; parallel to the 1st apodosis fuisse captūrōs, see note, p. 61
Nōn hostem...spectāre: *that (he) saw not the enemy but the situation (as) the authority*; add sē as acc. subj.; spectāre governs a double acc. where auctōrem is an acc. predicate
- 7 **subesse Rhēnum:** Rhēnum is acc. subj.
magnō....dolōrī: *served as great grief for the Germans*; “was for great grief for the Germans,” double dative construction: “magnō dolōrī” is dat. of purpose and “Germānīs” is dat. of interest
- 8 **Ariovistī mortem...victōriās:** subject of esse
- 9 **ārdēre:** *that Gaul is on fire*; “is eager (to act),” fire is a common metaphor for passion, in this case, feelings of anger and indignation
tot...acceptīs: abl. absolute
sub...imperium: *underneath...;* sub governs an abl. place where or as here acc. place to which
redactam: PPP redigō, modifying Galliam
superiōre...exstinctā: abl. absolute
reī militāris: *of military affairs*; with glōria
- 10 **quis...persuādēret** *who would persuade himself this*; in dir. discourse a deliberative pres. subjunctive, but in ind. discourse secondary sequence it is impf. subj.
sine certā...dēscendisse: (*namely*) *that...;* ind. disc. in apposition to neuter acc. sg. hoc above
sine certā rē: *without a reliable reason*
- 11 **dēscendisse:** *had lowered himself*; pf. inf. Ambiorix is acting unbecoming of his status
Suam sententiam...: *that his opinion...;* i.e. Ambiorix’s opinion; Sabinus is still employing Ambiorix as subject
in utramque partem: *on each side*
- 12 **sī...esset...perventūrōs (esse):** *If...was...;* *would arrive*; in dir. discourse a fut. more vivid (sī erit, pervenient); in ind. disc. in secondary seq. the protasis is impf. subj. and the apodosis a fut. inf., see grammar box, p. 59
dūrius: neut. sg. comparative adj., nom. pred.
- 13 **sī...cōnsentiret, esse positam:** *if...agreed, had been placed...;* in dir. disc., mixed simple condition (sī cōnsentit, posita est); in ind. disc. in secondary sequence the subordinate verb becomes impf. subj. and the main verb pf. pass. inf. (which we translate as plpf. in secondary sequence); see the box, p. 59
- 14 **ūnam...salūtem:** *a single (means of) safety*
Cottae atque eōrum: gen. modifying cōnsilium, the acc. subject of habēre
- 15 **quī dissentirent:** i.e. those who disagreed with Titūrius; verbs in subordinate clauses in ind. disc. are commonly subjunctive
quem...exitium: *what outcome does the plan...?;* interrog. adj. and noun introducing a question; acc. d.o. of habēre in ind. disc.
in quō: *in which...;* the cōnsilium of Cotta and others opposing Titūrius is the antecedent
- 16 **perīculum:** (*there was*)...*danger*; add esset
longinquā obsidiōne: *with...;* abl. of cause
esset timenda: *had to be feared*; “was going to be feared” passive periphrastic (gerundive + impf. subj. of sum) expressing necessity

30.1 Hāc in utramque partem disputātiōne habitā, cum ā Cottā p̄m̄is̄que 1
 ōrdinibus ācrit̄er resisterēt̄ur, ‘Vincite,’ inquit, ‘sī ita vultis,’ Sabinus, et id
 clāriōre vōce, ut magna pars mīlitum exaudir̄et; 2. ‘neque is sum,’ inquit, ‘quī
 gravissimē ex vōbīs mortis perīculō terrear: hī sapient; sī gravius quid 5
 acciderit, abs tē ratiōnem reposit̄ent; 3. quī, sī per tē liceat, perendinō diē cum
 proximīs hībernīs coniūctī commūnem cum reliquīs bellī cāsum sustineant,
 nōn, reiectī et relēgātī longē ab cēterīs, aut ferrō aut fame intereant.’

31.1 Cōnsurgitur ex cōnsiliō; comprehendunt utrumque et ōrant nē suā
 dissēnsiōne et pertināciā rem in summum perīculum dēdūcant: 2. facilem esse 10
 rem, seu maneant, seu proficīscantur, sī modo ūnum omnēs sentiant ac
 probent; contrā in dissēnsiōne nūllam sē salūtem perspicere. Rēs disputātiōne
 ad mediam noctem perducitur. 3. Tandem dat Cotta permōtus manūs:
 superat sententia Sabīnī. Prōnūntiāt̄ur primā lūce itūrōs. 4. Cōnsūmitur
 vigiliīs reliqua pars noctis, cum sua quisque mīles circumspiceret, quid sēcum
 portāre posset, quid ex īnstrūmentō hībernōrum relinquere cōgerēt̄ur. 5. 15
 Omnia excogitantur, quārē nec sine perīculō maneāt̄ur et languōre mīlitum
 et vigiliīs perīculum augeāt̄ur. 6. Prīmā lūce sīc ex castrīs proficīscuntur, ut
 quibus esset persuāsum nōn ab hoste, sed ab homine amīcissimo Ambiorige
 cōnsilium datum, longissimō agmine maximīsque impedīmentīs.

ācrit̄er: sharply, fiercely, 2

agmen, agminis n.: column, battle line, formation, 3

amīcus, -a, -um: friendly, 1

augeō, ēre, auxī, auctum: increase, enlarge 1

cēterī, -ae, -a: the remaining, rest, others, 1

circumspicō, -ere: look around, consider, 1

clārus, a, um: clear; famous, distinguished 1

comprehendō, -ere, -dī: seize, arrest; grasp 4

coniungō, -ere, -jūnxī, -junctus: join, 1

consumō, -ere, -sumpsī: to use up, spend, 2

consurgō, -ere, -surrexī: rise up (together), 1

contrā: opposite, facing (acc.), 2

dēdūcō, -ere: lead or draw down or away, 3

disputātiō, -tiōnis f.: disagreement, debate 2

dissensio, -siōnis f.: conflict, dissension, 2

eō, ire, ivi: to go, come, 4

exaudiō, -ire, -ivī, -itum: hear out, listen to 1

excogitō (1): think out, devise, contrive, 1

famēs, -is f.: hunger, 2

ferrum, -ī n.: iron; sword; tool, 1

inquam: say, 4

instrumentum, -ī n.: tool, implement; stock, 1

intereō, -ire, -ivī, -itum: to die, perish, 3

languor, -ōris m.: fatigue, weariness, sluggishness, 1

lūx, lūcis, f.: light, 3

maneō, -ēre, -sī, mānsus: remain, await 2

medius -a -um: in the middle of, 3

modo: only, merely, simply; just now, 4

nec: and not, nor (nec, nec = neither, nor) 2

ōrō (1): plead, pray (for), entreat, 2

perdūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum: to draw out, 1

perendinus, a, um: of day after tomorrow, 1

perspicō, -ere, -spexī, -spectrum: perceive, 1

pertinācia, -ae f.: stubbornness, obstinacy, 1

portō (1): carry, bear, bring, 2

prōnūntiō (1): to proclaim, speak forth, 4

quārē: wherefore, therefore, why, 1

reiciō, -ere, -ieci, -iectum: cast off or back, 1

relēgō (1): to send away, remove, 1

repscō, -ere: to ask back again, demand, 1

sapiō, -ere, sapivī: to taste; discern, think, 1

sententia, -ae f.: opinion, purpose, 2

sentīō, -ire, -sī, sēnsus: to feel, realize, 3

sīc: thus, in this way, 3

sīve, seu: whether, or (if), 2

tandem: finally, at last, at length, 2

terreō, -ēre, terruī, territum: to terrify, 2

vigilia, -ae f.: watch (1/4 period of night), 3

vincō, -ere, vicī, victum: conquer, defeat, 1

vōs: you (all), 1

vōx, vōcis, f.: voice; utterance, word, 4

- 1 **hāc...habitā**: ablative absolute
in utramque partem: *on each side*
prīmisque ōrdinibus: *and the first ranks*; i.e. centurions
- 2 **resisteretur**: (*Sabinus*) *was resisted*; impf. pass. subjunctive; cum is likely causal in sense
Vincite: *Prevail*; i.e. win the dispute
vultis: 2nd pl. present volō
id clārīore vōce: *and (he said) it with a rather loud voice*; supply inquit, ablative of manner loses “cum” when there is an adjective, here a comparative adjective
- 3 **ut...exaudirent**: *so that...*; purpose clause with impf. subj., secondary sequence
is...quī...terrear: *one who would be terrified*; i.e. “the sort of man who would...; *is* is a predicate; relative clause of characteristic with a pres. subj.
gravissimē: superlative adverb
- 4 **ex vōbīs**: *by you*; i.e. “danger (heard) from you,” abl. source
hī: *these (soldiers)*; i.e. at the meeting
sapient: *will know*; future tense
gravius quid: *anything more serious*; quid is indefinite after sī
- 5 **sī...acciderit, poscent**: *happens...will demand*; future more vivid (sī fut. pf., fut.), see, p. 59
quī: (*and these*) *who*
sī...liceat, sustineat...nōn...intereant: *should be allowed... would endure...would not perish*; future less vivid (sī + pres. subj., pres. subj.), licet, sustineō, and intereō; see box, p. 61
per tē: *by you*; “through you”
perendinō diē: *on...*; abl. time when
- 6 **hībernīs**: *winter-quarters*; throughout this episode hīberna denotes a winter camp
commūnem...bellī cāsum: bellī is a genitive of description modifying cāsum
- 7 **nōn...intereant**: *would not die*; nōn modifies the finite verb, pres. subj. intereō
- 8 **cōsurgitur**: *they rise from council*; “it is arisen (by them) from the council,” impersonal passive governs a dat. of agent, here missing) and is often translated in the active, see p. 57
comprehendunt utrumque: *they detain both*; i.e. the centurions stop Sabinus and Cotta
ōrant nē: *plead that...not*; negative ind. command governs pres. subj. in primary seq.
- 9 **facilem esse rem**: (*and*) *that the matter*; ind. disc. governed by ōrant, asyndeton, add “et”
- 10 **seu...seu**: *whether...or*; sīve...sīve, introduces and indirect question with present subjunctives
- sī modo**: *provided that...*; “if only,” a proviso clause governs a present subjunctive
contrā: *on the other hand*
- 11 **nūllam sē salūtem perspicere**: *that they...*; sē is acc. subj., nūllam salūtem is acc. d.o. in indirect discourse governed by ōrant and parallel to “facilem esse rem” above
Rēs: *the matter*; i.e. the discussions
- 12 **dat manūs**: *gives his hands*; i.e. surrenders
- 13 **sententia**: *the opinion*
primā lūce: abl. of time when
(eōs) itūrōs (esse): *that they...*; fut. inf. eō, ire
- 14 **vigiliīs**: *with night-watches*
sua...circumspiceret: *looks over his own things*; i.e. inspects equipment, gear, property
quisque: *each...*; an adjective modifying mīles
quid..posset: *what he was able...*; impf. subj. possum in indirect question; with sua, this construction is an example of *prolepsis* (anticipation): “his things what he was able...” is equivalent to “what things he was able”
- 15 **quid...cōgeretur**: (*and*) *what he was forced*; ind. question parallel to the one above
ex instrūmentō: *from the store, from the stock*; i.e. from the inventory
- 16 **quārē...maneātur...augeātur**: *for what reason they would remain not without danger and danger would be increased both by the fatigue and night-watches of the soldiers*; ind. question in apposition to omnia, the pres. subjunctive is potential subjunctive
- 17 **Prīma lūce**: *at...*; abl. time when
castrīs: *the camp*; castra is plural in form but singular in translation
ut...cōnsilium datum (esse): *as (if men) who had been persuaded that the plan had been given (to them) not by an enemy but by a man most friendly, Ambiorix*; ut here is equivalent to “ut sī,” which introduces a conditional sentence of comparison with the subjunctive (apodosis is missing); plpf. pass. subj. of persuādeō is used impersonally (common in verbs governing a dative), the dat. obj. quibus may be translated as subject; dātum (esse) is a pf. pass. inf. in an acc. + inf. construction that is subject of persuāsum esset. An alternative translation is “as if (men) who had been persuaded by Ambiorix not as an enemy but as a man most friendly (to them)”
- 19 **longissimō agmine maximīs impedimentīs**: ablative absolutes; add pple “being” for each

32.1 At hostēs, posteāquam ex nocturnō fremitū vigiliisque dē profectiōne 1
 eōrum sensērunt, collocātis īnsidiis bipertītō in silvīs, opportunō atque
 occultō locō, ā milibus passuum circiter duōbus Rōmānōrum adventum
 exspectābant 2. et, cum sē maior pars agminis in magnam convallem
 dēmīssisset, ex utrāque parte eius vallis subitō sē ostendērunt novissimōsque 5
 premere et prīmōs prohibēre ascensū atque inīquissimō nostrīs locō proelium
 committere coepērunt.

33.1 Tum dēmum Titūrius, quī nihil ante provīdisset, trepidāre et
 concursāre cohortēsque dispōnere, haec tamen ipsa timidē atque ut eum
 omnia dēficere vidērentur; quod plērumque eīs accidere cōnsuevit, quī in ipsō 10
 negōtiō cōnsilium capere cōguntur. 2. At Cotta, quī cōgitāisset haec posse in
 itinere accidere atque ob eam causam profectiōnis auctor non fuisset, nūllā in
 rē commūnī salutī dēerat, et in appellandīs cohortandisque mīlitibus
 imperātōris et in pugnā mīlitis officia praestābat. 3. Cum propter
 longitūdinem agminis minus facile omnia per sē obīre et, quid quōque locō 15
 faciendum esset, prōvidēre possent, iussērunt prōnūntiāre, ut impedīmenta
 relinquerent atque in orbem cōsisterent. 4. Quod cōnsilium etsī in eiusmodī
 cāsū reprehendendum nōn est, tamen incommodē accidit:

agmen, agminis n.: column, battle line, formation, 3
ante: before, in front of (acc); *adv.* before, 4
ascensus, -ūs m.: ascent, climb, 1
auctor, auctoris m.: agent, doer, cause, 4
bipertītō: in two parts, 1
coepī, coepisse, coeptum: to begin, 9
cogitō (1): to think, ponder, turn over, 1
cohortor, -ārī, cohortātum: urge on, incite 3
collocō (1): place together, gather, arrange, 4
committō, -ere: commence, commit, entrust 4
concurō (1): to run about, rush about, 1
consistō, -ere, -stītī: to stand (still), stop 2
convallis, -is m.: valley, deep lowland, 1
dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum: fail, give out on, 3
dēmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum: drop, sink, 1
dēmum: at length, finally, 1
dispōnō, -ere: to arrange distribute, 1
eiusmodī: of this kind, such; so, 3
exspectō (1): look out for, wait for, await, 3
fremitus, -ūs m.: roaring, murmuring, 1
imperātor, -oris m.: commander, leader, 2
incommodus, -a, -um: unfortunate, disastrous, 3

inīquus, -a, -um: uneven, unequal, not fair, 1
insidiae, -ārum, f.: ambush, plot, trap, 2
longitūdo, -inis f.: length, width, 2
negōtium, ī n.: business, task, 2
nocturnus, -a, -um: nocturnal, nightly, 3
novus, -a, -um: new, fresh, young, recent, 2
obeō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum: go to meet, attend to, 1
occultō (1): hide, conceal, 3
officium, -iī, n.: duty, obligation, 3
opportūnus, -a, -um: fit, suitable, useful, 2
orbis, -is m.: sphere, circle (+ terrae: world), 2
ostendō, -ere, -ī, ntus: show, promise, 2
posteāquam: after (+ indicative), 1
prōnūntiō (1): speak forth or in advance, 4
prōvideō, -ēre, -vīdī, -visum: to foresee, take
 precautions, prepare for 3
reprehendō, -ere, -dī: blame; hold back, 1
sentīō, -īre, -sī, sēnsū: to feel, realize, 3
silva, -ae f.: wood, forest, woodland, 4
timidus, -a, -um: fearful, shy, 1
trepidō (1): be agitated, be in confusion, 1
vigilia, -ae f.: watch (1/4 period of night), 3

- 1 **ex nocturnō fremitū vigiliisque:** *from the roar at night and the night-watches*; i.e. the Roman soldiers had not settled down but instead stayed awake and made much noise
sensērunt: *they realized*
- 2 **collocātis insidiis:** abl. absolute
bipertitō: *in two parts*; adverb
opportūnō...locō: *in...;* abl. place where in apposition to *in silvīs*
- 3 **ā milibus passuum circiter duōbus:** *about two miles away*; “from about two thousand of paces,” partitive genitive;
- 4 **maior pars agminis:** i.e. the Romans
cum...dēmīssisset: *when...had dropped*; plpf. subjunctive
- 5 **ex utraq̄ue parte:** *on both sides*; “from each side”
eius vallis: *of this valley*; *eius* is demonstrative
nōvissimōs: *the rear (soldiers)*; the “most recent” soldiers are the “last” or “rear” soldiers in a column of soldiers, the enemy is attacking the rear and front of the battle column
- 6 **premere, prohibēre, committere:** all of the infinitives are governed by *coepērunt*
prīmōs: *first (soldiers)*; the front of the column
ascensū: *from...;* abl. of separation
inīquissimō nostrīs locō: *(in) a place most unfair to our (men)*; place where, superlative
proelium committere: *commence battle*; idiom
- 8 **tum dēmum:** *then at last*
Titūrius: *Sabinus*; Quintus Titūrius Sabinus
quī...provīdisset: *since he had foreseen nothing beforehand*; “who had foreseen nothing beforehand,” *quī* + plpf subjunctive is a relative clause causal in sense, equivalent to a cum-clause (*quī* = *cum is*) causal in sense; cf. l. 11
trepidāre, concursāre, dispōnere: historical infinitives with nom. Titūrius as subject, translate all three in the 3rd sg. imperfect; at times used to give a rapid sequence of events
- 9 **haec ipsa:** *(he did) these very things*; neuter pl. acc., supply a verb
ut...omnia...vidērentur: *so that all (his wits) seemed*; a result clause, *omnia* is subject; *videor* is frequently translated as “seem;” the word “omnia” pertains to his internal turmoil
eum: *him*; i.e. Titūrius, object of *dēficere*
- 10 **quod...cōnsuēvit:** *which was accustomed*
eīs: *to those*; dat. of interest with *accidere*
- 11 **cōnsilium capere:** *to adopt a plan*; idiom
quī cōgitāset...fuisset: *since he had realized...and had been*; “who had realized...” just as above *quī* + plpf. subjunctives in a relative clause causal in sense, equivalent to a cum-clause (*quī* = *cum is*) causal in sense
haec posse: *that these things...;* neut. pl. acc. subject of inf. of *possum*
- 12 **ob eam causam:** *for this reason*; “on account of this reason”
fuisset: pluperfect subjunctive of *sum*
nūllā in rē: *in nūllā rē*; order emphasizes adj.
- 13 **commūnī salūtī:** dat. object of impf. *dēsum*
in appellandīs cohortandisque militibus: both are gerundives modifying *militibus*, use a gerund-gerundive flip
- 14 **(officia) imperātōris:** add “officia;” there is a contrast between the *officia imperātōris* and *officia militis*
praestābat: *performed*
- 15 **minus:** *less*; comparative adv. modifies *facile*
facile: *easily*; irregular adv. of *facilis*, *facile*
omnia...obīre: *to attend to everything*
quōque: *in each...;* abl. place where, *quisque*
- 16 **faciendum esset:** *had to be done*; “was going to be done,” gerundive + *sum* (here, impf. subj.) is a pass. periphrastic expressing necessity; subjunctive in an ind. question
possent: *they were able*; Cotta and Titūrius
prōnūntiāre: *that (the centurions) command...;* + indirect command
ut...cōnsisterent: ind. command, impf. subj.
- 17 **in orbem:** *in a circle*; so that all soldiers have their backs to one another and fight forward
Quod: *this...;* “which” translate the relative adj. as a demonstrative adj. with *cōnsilium*
- 18 **reprehendendum nōn est:** *must not be blamed*; gerundive + *sum* is a pass. periphrastic expressing necessity or obligation
incommodē: *unadvantageously, disastrously*

Cum-Clauses

| | | |
|----------------------------------|-------------------|---|
| Cum haec verba audīvit | 1. temporal | <i>When he heard these words</i> |
| Cum haec verba audīvisset | 2. circumstantial | <i>When/After he had heard these words</i> |
| | 3. causal | <i>Since/Because he had heard these words</i> |
| | 4. concessive | <i>Although he had heard these words</i> |

33.5 nam et nostrīs mīlitibus spem minuit et hostēs ad pugnam alacriōrēs 1
effēcit, quod nōn sine summō timōre et dēspērātiōne id factum vidēbātur.
Praetereā accidit, quod fierī necesse erat, ut vulgō mīlitēs ab signīs
discēderent, quae quisque eōrum cārissima habēret, ab impedīmentīs petere
atque arripere properāret, clāmōre et flētū omnia complērentur. 5

34.1 At barbarīs cōnsilium nōn dēfuit. Nam ducēs eōrum tōtā aciē
prōnūntiāre iussērunt, nē quis ab locō discēderet: illōrum esse praedam atque
illīs reservārī quaecumque Rōmānī reliquissent: proinde omnia in victōriā
posita existīmārent. 2. Erant et virtūte et studiō pugrandī parēs; nostrī,
tametsī ab duce et ā Fortūnā dēserēbantur, tamen omnem spem salūtis in 10
virtūte ponēbant, et quotiēns quaeque cohors prōcurrerat, ab eā parte magnus
numerus hostium cadēbat. 3. Quā rē animadversā, Ambiorix prōnūntiārī
iubet, ut procul tēla coniciant neu propius accēdant et, quam in partem
Rōmānī impetum fēcerint, cēdant (levitāte armōrum et cōtidiānā
exercitātiōne nihil eīs nocērī posse), 4. rūsus sē ad signa recipientēs 15
īnsequantur.

35.1 Quō praeceptō ab eīs dīligentissimē observātō, cum quaequam cohors
ex orbe excesserat atque impetum fēcerat, hostēs vēlōcissimē refugiēbant.
2. Interim eam partem nūdārī necesse erat et ab latere apertō tēla recipī.

aciēs, -ēī f.: sharp edge, battle line, army, 2
alacer, alacris, alacre: eager, spirited, 1
aperiō, -īre, -uī, -ertus: open, disclose, 3
arripīō, -ere, -ripuī: to grab, snatch, lay hold of, 1
cadō, cadere, cecidi, cāsūrum: to fall, 1
cārus, -a, -um: dear, precious, costly, 1
cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessus: withdraw, move, 2
clāmōr, clāmōris m.: shout, cry, 2
compleō, -ere, -ēvī, -ētum: fill up, fill, 6
cotidiānus, -a, -um: daily, of every day, 3
dēsero, -ere, -ruī: desert, forsake, abandon, 1
dēspērātiō, -tiōnis f.: hopelessness, despair 1
dīligēns, -entis: careful, diligent, accurate, 2
dux, ducis m./f.: leader, guide, chief, 4
excēdō, -ere, cessī, -cessum: go out, 3
exercitātiō, -iōnis f.: training, practice, 2
fiō, fierī, factus: become, be made, 3
flētus, -ūs m.: weeping, wailing, 1
fortūna, -ae f.: fortune, chance, luck, 4
impetus, -ūs m.: attack, onset, assault, 7
insequor, -sequī, -secūtus: follow, ensue, 1
latus, -eris n.: side, flank, 2
levitās, -tātis f.: lightness; inconstancy, 1
minuō, -ere, minuī: to diminish, ebb, 2
necesse: necessary; (it is) necessary, 4
nēvē, neu: or not, and not, nor, 2

noceō, -ere, -uī, -itum: harm, injure, hurt, 2
nudō (1): to make naked or bare, uncover, 1
observō (1): watch, observe, attend to, 2
orbis, -is m.: sphere, (+ terrae: world), 2
pār, parīs: equal, similar, even, 2
praecipīō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum: receive in
advance, instruct, admonish, 2
praeda, -ae f.: loot, spoils, cattle, 2
praetereā: besides, hereafter, 2
procul: far, from a distance, from afar, 3
prōcurrō, ere, currī, cursum: run forward, 2
proinde: then, therefore, consequently, 1
prōnūntiō (1): speak forth or in advance, 4
properō (1): to hasten, complete quickly, 1
proprius: more closely, nearer, 3
quicumque, quae-, quod-: whosoever, 4
quispiam, quae-, quod-: anyone, anything (adj. any), 2
quotiens: as often as, how often?, 1
refugiō, -ere, -fūgī: to flee back, run back, 1
reservō (1): lay up, save up, reserve, 1
rursus: again, backward, back, 4
studium, -ī n.: zeal, enthusiasm, pursuit, 3
tametsi: even if, although, though, 1
timor, -oris m.: fear, dread, anxiety, 2
vēlox, vēlōcis adj.: swift, rapid, quick, 1
vulgus, -ī n.: mass, mob, multitude, 2

- 1 **nostris militibus**: *for our soldiers*; dat. interest
alacriores: comparative adjective
- 2 **effecit**: *made (x) (y)*; double acc., *alacriores* is in the predicative position
quod: *because*
factum (esse): pf. pass. inf. following *videbatur*
videbatur: *seemed*; impf. pass.
- 3 **accidit**: *it happened*; governs the noun result clause ut...complērentur
quod fieri...erat: (*which it was necessary to happen*); parenthetical, inf. fiō
vulgō: *commonly, generally*; abl. as adverb
signis: *the standards*; i.e. military standards
- 4 **haberet**: *considered*; “held,” impf. subj. in a relative clause of characteristic, governs a double accusative
- 6 **barbaris...defuit**: *fail the barbarians*; dat. of interest
tota acie: *on the entire battle line*; place where
- 7 **pronuntiare**: *commanded*; dūcēs is acc. subj., the inf. governs the ind. command (nē)
nē quis: *that not anyone...*; aliquis, aliquid is a common indefinite pronoun (anyone, anything), but quis, quid is commonly used as an indefinite (who → anyone, what → anything) after sī, nisi, num, and nē. The mnemonic for this construction is the jingle “After sī, nisi, num, and nē, all the ali’s go away” (in other words indefinite aliquid becomes just quid)
- 7 **illorum esse praedam**: (*and*) *that the loot was theirs*; i.e. the Gauls’, the indirect discourse is parallel to the ind. command and likewise governed by *pronuntiare*
illis: *for them*; dat. of interest
- 8 **quaecumque...reliquissent**: *whatsoever...*; relative clause of characteristic (plpf. subj.); the missing antecedent is acc. subject of *reservari*
proinde...existimarent: *therefore let them* *think that*; a jussive (volitive) subjunctive in indirect discourse remains a subjunctive; in secondary sequence the pres. subj. is impf.
- 9 **posita (esse)**: *have been put aside*; i.e. the loot from the Romans is waiting for the Gauls to take it; ind. discourse, omnia is acc. subject
et virtute et studio: *both in...*; abl. of respect qualifying *parēs*
pugnandi: gen. sg. gerund
nostrī: *our (soldiers)*; nom. subject
- 10 **Fortunā**: *fortunā* is personified as a goddess
- 11 **ab eā parte**: *from that side*
- 12 **Quā rē animadversā**: *with this matter...*; abl. abs.; translate the relative as demonstrative
pronuntiarī...ut: *it to be commanded that...*; pass. inf. governs indirect command
- 13 **neu**: *and not*; nēve
quam in partem: *in whatever direction...*; relative clause of characteristic with pf. subjunctive of *faciō*
- 14 **cēdant**: *they withdraw (from this direction)*
- 15 **nihil**: *not at all*; adverbial accusative
eīs...posse: *that it is possible for them*; ind. discourse with an impersonal inf. *possum*
sē...recipientēs: (*the Romans*) *while retreating to their standards*; i.e. attack the Romans as they try to relign themselves with the fixed military standards for each unit acc. d.o. of *insequantur*
- 16 **insequantur**: pres. subjunctive, part of the indirect command introduced by *ut* in line 13
- 17 **Quō praeceptō...**: *this instruction...*; abl. abs.
ab eīs: i.e. by the Gauls
diligentissimē: superlative adverb
quaepiam cohors: *any cohort*
- 18 **vēlōcissimē**: superlative adverb, *vēlōx, vēlōcis*
- 19 **necesse erat**: *it was necessary*
recipi: pres. pass. inf., *tēla* is neuter acc. subj.

Ablative Absolute in Translation

Absolutes are circumstantial, causal, or concessive in sense, even if the translation does not reveal it.

Cum-Clauses are just as versatile and can have a similar variety of uses within a Latin sentence.

| | | |
|------------------------|--------------------|--|
| verbis auditis | 1. raw translation | <i>(with) the words having been heard...</i> |
| | 2. Circumstantial | When/After the words had been heard... |
| | 3. Causal | Since/Because the words had been heard... |
| | 4. Concessive | Although the words had been heard... |
| Caesar audiente | 1. raw translation | <i>(with) Caesar listening</i> |
| | 2. Circumstantial | When/While Caesar is/was listening... |
| | 3. Causal | Since/Because Caesar is/was listening... |
| | 4. Concessive | Although Caesar is/was listening... |

35.3 Rūrsus cum in eum locum unde erant ēgressī revertī coeperant, et ab 1
 eīs quī cesserant et ab eīs quī proximī steterant circumveniēbantur; 4. sīn
 autem locum tenēre vellent, nec virtūtī locus relinquēbatur neque ab tantā
 multitūdine coniecta tēla confertī vitāre poterant. 5. Tamen tot incommodīs
 cōnfectātī, multīs vulneribus acceptīs, resistēbant; et magnā parte diē 5
 cōnsūptā, cum ā prīmā lūce ad hōram octāvam pugnārētur, nihil quod
 ipsīs esset indignum committēbant. 6. Tum Titō Balventiō, quī superiōre
 annō prīmum pīlum dūxerat, virō fortī et magnae auctōritātis, utrumque
 femur trāgulā trāicitur; 7. Quintus Lucānius, eiusdem ōrdinis, fortissimē
 pugnāns, dum circumventō filiō subvenit, interficitur; 8. Lucius Cotta lēgātus 10
 omnēs cohortēs ordinēsque adhortāns in adversum ōs fundā vulnerātur.

36.1 Hīs rēbus permōtus Quintus Titūrius, cum procul Ambiorīgem suōs
 cohortantem cōspexisset, interpretem suum Gnaeum Pompeium ad eum
 mittit rogātum ut sibi mīlitibusque parcat. 2. Ille appellātus respondit: si velit 15
 sēcum colloquī, licēre; spērāre ā multitūdine impetrārī posse, quod ad
 mīlitum salūtem pertineat; ipsī vērō nihil nocitum īrī, inque eam rem sē
 suam fidem interpōnere. Ille cum Cottā sauciō commūnicat, 3. sī videātur,
 pugnā ut excēdant et cum Ambiorīge ūnā colloquantur: spērāre ab eō de suā
 ac mīlitum salūte impetrārī posse. Cotta sē ad armātum hostem itūrum negat
 atque in eō persevērat. 20

adhortor, -ārī, -ātum: encourage, urge on, 1
adversus, -a, -um: opposite, in front, 2
armātus, -a, -um: armed, armor-clad, 2
auctōritās, -tātis f.: influence, clout, 3
Balventius, -ī m.: Balventius, 1
cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessus: withdraw, move, 2
coepī, coepisse, coeptum: to begin, 9
cohortor, -ārī, cohortātum: urge on, incite 3
colloquor, -quī, -locūtum: to converse, 4
committō, -ere: commence, commit, entrust 4
communicō (1): share, impart, 4
confertus, a, um: crowded together, dense, 3
conflictō (1): contend with, harm, 1
conspiciō, -ere, spexī, spectus: see, behold 5
consumō, -ere, -sumpsī: to use up, spend, 2
eō, īre, ivī, itum: to go, come, 4
excēdō, -ere, cessī, -cessum: go out, 3
femur, femori n.: thigh, 1
fidēs, eī f.: faith, honor, 4
funda, ae f.: sling, 3
Gnaeus, -ī m.: Gnaeus, 1
hora, -ae f.: hour, 4
impetrō (1): to obtain, accomplish, 3
incommodus, -a, -um: unfortunate, disastrous, 3
indignus, -a, -um: unworthy, undeserving, 1

interpōnō, -ere, -posuī: include, introduce, 2
interpres, interpretis m/f.: messenger, 1
Lucānius, -ī m.: Lucianus, 1
lūx, lūcis, f.: light, 3
nec: and not, nor (nec,nec = neither,nor) 2
negō (1): to deny, say that...not, 2
noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum: harm, injure, hurt, 2
octāvus, -a, -um: eighth, 1
ōs, ōris n.: face, mouth 1
parcō, -ere, pepercī: to spare, refrain (dat), 2
perseverō (1): to persist, persevere, 1
pīlum, -ī n.: pilum, javelin, 3
Pompeius, -ī m.: Pompey, 1
procul: far, from a distance, from afar, 3
respondeō, -ēre, -dī, -ōnsum: to answer, 3
revertor, -ī, reversus sum: to turn back, return, 2
rogō (1): to ask; tell, 2
rursus: again, backward, back, 4
saucius, -a, -us: wounded, injured, hurt, 1
sīn: but if, if however, 1
stō, -āre, steti, stātum: stand still, stop, 3
subveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum: come up to, aid,
 relieve, 2
Titus, -ī m.: Titus, 4
tot: so many, 2

trāgula, -ae f.: tragula (a Gallic javelin) 3
trāciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum: pierce, cast across, 2
unde: whence, from which source, 3
vērō: in truth, truly, in fact, to be sure, 3

vir, virī m.: man, 4
vītō (1): avoid, evade, shun, 1
vulnerō (1): wound, injure, 3
vulnus, -eris n.: wound, blow, 3

-
- 1 **unde erant ēgressī:** plpf. dep. ēgredior
revertī: present deponent inf.
- 2 **cesserant:** *had withdrawn*; As some of the Romans made attacks from the circle (orbis), the opposing enemy withdrew temporarily and the flanks (quī proximī steterant) attacked. When the Romans returned to the circle, the opposing enemy would advance once again
- 3 **locum tenēre:** *to hold ground*; i.e. if the Romans did not advance in groups but instead remained together in the circle
vellent: *they should wish*; an impf. subjunctive, the protasis of a mixed condition in secondary sequence;
nec...neque: *neither...nor*; linking the apodosis
locus: *opportunity...*
virtūtī: *for valor*; dat. of purpose
- 4 **conferūtī:** modifies the nom. subject
incommodīs cōnflctātī: *harmed by so many disadvantages*
- 5 **multīs...accēptīs:** ablative absolute
resistēbant: *they kept on fighting*; iterative impf.
magnā...cōnsūptā: abl. absolute
- 6 **cum...pugnārētur:** *although they fought*; cum is concessive in force; impersonal passive p. 57
quod ipsīs...indignum: *which was unworthy of the Romans themselves*; indignus, “unworthy of,” governs an abl., here the intensive ipsīs
- 7 **Titō Balventiō:** *to Titus Balventius*; dat. of interest
superiōre annō: *in...*; abl. of time when
- 8 **prīmum pīlum:** *the first pilum*; the officer known as Primus Pilus was the highly ranked centurion who threw the first pīlum in battle; Titus held this rank during the previous year
virō fortī: dat. in apposition to Titō Balventiō
magnae auctōritātis: *of great clout*; gen. of quality parallel with dative fortī
utrumque femur: *each thigh*; neuter subject
- 9 **eiusdem ōrdinis:** *of the same rank*; gen. quality
fortissimē: superlative adverb
pugnāns: nom. sg. pres. pple, pugnō
- 10 **subvenit:** *he is approaching to help*
- 11 **in adversum ōs:** *full on the mouth*; “onto the opposing mouth,” acc. place to which; another meaning for ōs, ōris is “face”
- 12 **hīs rēbus:** *because of these things*; abl. cause
suōs: *his own (men)*; i.e. Ambiorix’s men, the reflexive should grammatically refer to the subject Cotta’s men but it does not
- 13 **eum:** *him*; i.e. Ambiorix
- 14 **rogātum:** *to ask*; supine (PPP + um) in the accusative expresses purpose, which in English is often expressed with an infinitive
ut...parcat: ind. command following rogātum
sibi militibusque: *him and (his) soldiers*; i.e. Cotta and his soldiers
sī velit: *if he wishes*; subordinate clauses in ind. discourse often fall into the subjunctive; here a pres. subjunctive of volō, velle in what was originally a present simple condition
- 15 **sēcum:** cum sē
licere: *it is allowed (for him)*; i.e. for Titurius, ind. discourse with an impersonal verb
spērāre: *that (he) hoped*; i.e. Ambiorix hoped
ā multitudīne: i.e. from the Gauls
quod...pertineat: *(that) which...*; the missing antecedent is acc. subject of posse impetrārī; this is a relative clause of characteristic with the present subjunctive
- 16 **ipsī:** *that for (Titurius) himself*; dative interest or possible a dat. of agent with nocitum īrī
nihil: *not at all*; “in no way,” acc. of respect
nocitum īrī: *it would not be harmed*; “it is going to be harmed:” a future passive inf. (supine + pres. pass. inf. of eō, īre), here impersonal
ipsī...nocitum īrī: *that indeed he himself would not at all be harmed*; “indeed for him himself not at all it was going to be harmed,” a rare future passive inf. (supine + pres. pass. inf. of eō, īre), here impersonal
- 17 **sē...interpōnere:** *he gave his pledge*
- 17 **Ille:** *that one*; i.e. Titurius speaks with Cotta
videātur: *it seems good*; i.e. if he agrees with Ambiorix’s terms; subordinate clauses govern a subjunctive in ind. discourse
pugnā: *from battle*; abl. separation
ut...colloquantur: *(namely) that...*; noun result clause governed by impersonal videātur
- 18 **spērāre:** *that (Cotta) hoped*; see also line 15
ab eō: *from him*; i.e. from Ambiorix
- 19 **sē itūrum esse:** fut. inf. eō, īre

37.1 Sabīnus quōs in praesentiā tribūnōs mīlitum circum sē habēbat et 1
 p̄m̄ōrum ōrdinum centuriōnēs sē sequī iubet et, cum propius Ambiorīgem
 accessisset, iussus arma abicere, imperātum facit suīsque ut idem faciant
 imperat. 2. Interim, dum dē condiciōnibus inter sē agunt longiorque cōsultō
 ab Ambiorīge īnstitutur sermō, paulātīm circumventus interficitur. 3. Tum 5
 vērō suō mōre ‘Victōriam’ conclāmant atque ululātum tollunt impetūque in
 nostrōs factō ōrdinēs perturbant. 4. Ibi Lucius Cotta pugnāns interficitur cum
 maximā parte mīlitum. Reliquī sē in castra recipiunt unde erant ēgressī; 5. ex
 quibus Lucius Petrosidius aquilifer, cum magnā multitudine hostium
 premerētur, aquilam intrā vallum proiēcit; ipse prō castrīs fortissimē pugnāns 10
 occīditur. Illī aegrē ad noctem oppugnātiōnem sustinent; 6. noctū ad unum
 omnēs, despērātā salūte, sē ipsī interficiunt. 7. Paucī ex proeliō lapsī incertīs
 itineribus per silvās ad Titum Labiēnum legātum in hīberna perveniunt atque
 eum dē rēbus gestīs certiōrem faciunt.

38.1 Hāc victoriā sublātus Ambiorīx statim cum equitātū in Aduatucōs, quī 15
 erant eius regnō finītīmī, proficīscitur; neque noctem neque diem intermittit
 peditātumque sēsē subsequī iubet. 2. Rē demonstrātā Aduatucīsque concitātīs
 posterō diē in Nerviōs pervenit hortāturque, nē suī in perpetuum liberandī
 atque ulcīscendī Rōmānōs prō eīs, quās acceperint, iniūriīs occāsionem
 dīmittant: 3. interfectōs esse lēgātōs duōs magnamque partem exercitūs 20
 interīsse demōnstrat; 4. nihil esse negōtī, subitō oppressam legiōnem quae
 cum Cicerōne hiemet interficī; sē ad eam rem profitētur adiūtōrem. Facile
 hāc ōrātiōne Nerviīs persuādet.

abiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum: throw aside or away, 2
adiūtōr, -ōris m.: helper, assistant, 2
aeger, -gra, -grum: sick, weary; *adv.* scarcely, 4
agō, agere, ēgī, āctum: drive, lead, do, 4
aquila, -ae f.: eagle, eagle standard, 4
aquilifer, -ferī m.: eagle-bearer, 1
centurio, -iōnis m.: centurion, 4
circum: around, round about, 2
concitō (1): stir up, incite, impel, 2
conclamō (1): cry out together, shout, 2
condiciō, -ciōnis f.: arrangement, state, 2
consultō: on purpose, deliberately, 3
dēsperō (1): to have no hope, give up, 2
dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus: lose, send (away), 3
hiemō (1): spend the winter, 3
hortor, -ārī, hortātum: encourage, urge, 2
incertus, -a, -um: unreliable, doubtful, 2
iniūria, -ae f.: wrong, insult, injustice, 4
īnstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum: set, establish, 3
intereō, -ire, -ivī, -itum: to die, perish, 3
intrā: within, among (+ acc.), 3

lābor, lābī, lapsum: glide, slide, slip, 1
liberō (1): free, liberate, 3
mōs, mōris m.: custom, manner, law, 4
negōtium, īī n.: business, task, 2
noctū: by night; abl. as *adv.* nox, noctis, 4
occāsio, -iōnis f.: opportunity, occasion, 2
occīdō, -ere, occidī, occīsus: kill, cut down 4
opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum: crush,
 burden, overwhelm, 3
paucī, -ae, -a: little, few, scanty, 4
paulātīm: gradually, little by little, 3
peditātus, -ūs m.: infantry, 3
perpetuus, -a, -um: constant, everlasting, 4
Petrosidius, -ī m.: Petrosidius, 1
posterus, -a, -um: next, following, 2
praesentia, -ae f.: presence, 2
profiteor, -ērī, -fessum: profess, declare, 1
proiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum: throw
 forward, project, 2
proprius: more closely, nearer, 3
sequor, -ī, secūtus: follow, pursue, 4

sermo, -mōnis m.: conversation, discourse, 3
silva, -ae f.: wood, forest, woodland, 4
statim: immediately, at once, 4
Titus, -ī m.: Titus, 4
tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātum: raise, destroy, 2

tribūnus, -ī m.: tribune, officer, 2
ulciscor, -ī, ultum: avenge, take vengeance 1
ululātus, -ūs m.: howling, wailing, yelling, 1
unde: whence, from which source, 3
vērō: in truth, truly, in fact, to be sure, 3

- 1 **quōs...tribūnōs militum...habēbat:** *those tribunes of the soldiers whom...;* tribūnōs is antecedent—not part of—quōs...habēbat
- 2 **sequī:** inf. sequor
iubet: both tribūnōs, centruriōnēs are objects
- 3 **accessisset:** plpf. subjunctive accēdō
iussus: PPP iubeō, iubere
imperātum facit: *carries out the command;* “the thing having been commanded” PPP
suīs: *his own (men);* dat. object of imperat
ut...faciant: ind. command
idem: *the same thing;* id-dem, neuter acc. sg.
- 4 **dē condiōnibus...agunt:** *they talk about the conditions...;* common idiom employing agō and dē + ablative, here the conditions of surrender
inter sē: *with one another;* ‘among themselves’
longior...īnstituīt sermō: *a longer conversation is arranged*
cōsultō: *deliberately;* ablative as an adverb
- 5 **circumventus:** the nom. subject is Sabīnus
- 6 **suō mōre:** *by their custom;* “from their custom”
Victoriam: Latin exclamation take the acc.
- 7 **impetū...factō:** ablative absolute
in nostrōs: *against our (soldiers)*
- 8 **Reliquī:** *the remaining (men);* i.e. the survivors
sē...recipiunt: *retreat;* “take themselves back”
- 9 **erant ēgressī:** plpf. deponent ēgredior
ex quibus: *from these;* for transitions, English speakers prefer a demonstrative
- 10 **aquilam:** *the eagle;* i.e. the entire wooden standard which contained the golden image of an eagle on top; the aquilifer saves the eagle from capture as one today might save a flag
vallum: i.e. the wall of the camp, which often consisted of mound of earth with a wooden palisade on top and a deep ditch below
prō: *in front of;* + ablative
pugnāns: pres. pple, pugnō
- 11 **aegrē...sustinent:** *with difficulty sustained;* “scarcely sustained”
ad noctem: *till the night*
noctū: *at night;* adverb
ad ūnum: *to the man*
- 12 **despērātās salūte:** abl. abs.
ipsī: *themselves;* nom. pl., intensive pronoun
- lapsī:** *having slipped;* pf. deponent pple labor
incertīs itineribus: *by uncertain routes*
- 13 **in hiberna:** *into winter-quarters;* a journey of about 100 miles at this time
- 14 **certiōrem faciunt:** *inform;* “make him more certain;” a common idiom in Caesar
gestīs: *carried out;* PPP gerō
- 15 **sublātus:** *uplifted;* i.e. “elated;” PPP tollō, as often, the prefix sub- means “from under up”
in Aduatucōs: *to the Aduatuci;* or ‘among...’
- 16 **regnō:** dative with the predicate adj. finītimī
- 17 **subsequī:** pres. deponent inf.
Rē...concitātis: two ablative absolutes
- 18 **posterō diē:** *on...;* ablative time when
in Nervios: *to the Nervii, among the Nervii*
nē...acceperint (et)...dīmittant: *that they not...;* negative ind. command governed by hortātur
- suī...liberandī:** *of freeing themselves;* gen. sg. gerundive; when translating, employ a gerund-gerundive flip: make suī the gerund’s object (sē), this genitive modifies occāsionem
- 19 **ulciscendī Rōmānōs:** a gen. sg. gerund and acc. object (this construction is unusual since it is often expressed as a noun + modifying gerundive); parallel to liberandī and likewise modifying occāsionem
prō eis...iniūriīs: *(in return) for...;* eis is a demonstrative modifying iniūriās
quās acceperint: perfect subj. in a relative clause of characteristic; the antecedent is fem. plural iniūriīs
- 20 **interfectōs esse:** *that...;* pf. pass. infinitive interficiō with lēgātōs duōs as acc. subject
lēgātōs duōs: i.e. Sabīnus and Cotta
- 21 **interisse:** *to have perished;* interiisse, pf. inf. intereō with partem as acc. subject
nihil esse negōtī: *that there is no trouble;* “nothing of business;” negōtī is a partitive gen. the acc. + inf. is governed by profitētur below
oppressam: *having been surprised;* opprimō
- 22 **hiemet:** pres. subj., verbs in subordinate clauses in ind. disc. are commonly subjunctive
interfici: pres. passive inf., legiōnem is acc. subj.
sē: *that he (was);* ad esse; following profitētur

39.1 Itaque cōnfestim dīmissīs nuntiīs ad Ceutronēs, Grudiōs, Levācōs, 1
 Pleumoxiōs, Geidumnōs, quī omnēs sub eōrum imperiō sunt, quam maximās
 manūs possunt cōgunt et dē improvīsō ad Cicerōnis hīberna advolant
 nōndum ad eum famā dē Titūrī morte perlātā. 2. Huic quoque accidit, quod 5
 fuit necesse, ut nōnnūllī mīlitēs, quī lignātiōnis mūnitiōnisque causā in silvās
 discessissent, repentinō equitum adventū interciperentur. 3. Hīs circumventīs
 magnā manū Eburōnēs, Nervii, Aduatucī atque hōrum omnium sociī et
 clientēs legiōnem oppugnāre incipiunt. Nostrī celeriter ad arma concurrunt,
 vāllum conscendunt. 4. Aegrē is diēs sustentātur, quod omnem spem hostēs 10
 in celeritāte ponēbant atque hanc adeptī victōriam in perpetuum sē fore
 victōrēs cōnfidēbant.

40.1 Mittuntur ad Caesarem cōnfestim ab Cicerōne litterae magnīs
 prōpositīs praemiīs, sī pertulissent: obsessīs omnibus viīs missī intercipiuntur.
 2. Noctū ex materiā, quam mūnitiōnis causā comportāverant, turrēs 15
 admodum CXX excitantur incrēdibilī celeritāte; quae dēesse operī vidēbantur,
 perficiuntur. 3. Hostēs posterō diē, multō maiōribus coāctis copiīs, castra
 oppugnant, fossam complent. Eādem ratiōne, quā prīdiē, ab nostrīs resistitur:
 4. hoc idem reliquīs deinceps fit diēbus.

adipiscor, -ī, adeptum: get, obtain, reach, 1
admodum: completely, quite; just about, 2
advolō (1): to fly to, rush to, 1
aeger, -gra, -grum: sick, weary, 4
Ceutronēs, -um m.: Ceutrones (tribe) 1
cliens, -entis m.: client, dependent, 4
compleō, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētum: fill up, fill, 3
comportō (1): carry together, collect, 3
concurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursus: run eagerly, clash, 2
cōnfestim: immediately, 4
confidō, -ere, confisus sum: trust, believe, rely upon, 4
conscendō, -ere, -ī, -ēnsus: climb, board, 1
deinceps: one after another, successively, 1
dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus: send (away), 3
excitō (1): excite, rouse up, raise, inspire, 3
fāma, -ae f.: rumor, story, hearsay, 2
fiō, fieri, factus: become, be made, 3
fossa, -ae f.: ditch, trench, 2
Geidumnī, -ōrum m.: Geidumnī, 1
Grudiī, -ōrum m.: Grudi, 1
improvīsus, -a, -um: unforeseen, unexpected, 1
incipiō, -ere, incēpī, inceptum: begin, 1
incrēdibilis, -e: unbelievable, 1
intercipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum: catch, intercept, 3

Levācī, -ōrum m.: Levaci, 1
lignātiō, -tiōnis f.: gathering of timber, 1
materia, -ae f.: timber, wood, material, 2
necesse: necessary; (it is) necessary, 4
noctū: by night; abl. as adv. nox, noctis, 4
nōndum: not yet, 3
nōnnullus, -a, -um: some, not none, 2
obsidēō, -ēre, sēdī, sessum: besiege, beset, 2
opus, -eris n.: work, deed, toil, 2
perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus: carry through, 2
perficiō, -ere: complete, accomplish, 3
perpetuus, -a, -um: constant, everlasting, 4
Pleumoxiī, -iōrum m.: Pleumoxi, 1
posterus, -a, -um: next, following, 2
prīdiē: on the day before, the previous day, 1
prōpōnō, -ere, posuī, positum: to set forth, 1
quoque: also, 2
repentinus, -a, -um: sudden, unexpected, 4
silva, -ae f.: wood, forest, woodland, 4
socius, -ī m.: comrade, ally, companion, 2
sustentō (1): to hold up, sustain, maintain, 1
via, -ae, f.: road, way, path, 2
victor, -ōris m.: conquerer, vanquisher, 1

- 2 **cōrum**: *their*; i.e. of the Nervii
quam maximās...possunt: *the largest groups (as) they are able*; quam + superl. = “as X as possible,” possunt makes construction explicit
cōgunt: *they gather together*
- 3 **dē improvīsō**: *unexpectedly*; “from the unforeseen,” often with preposition
- 4 **nōndum ad eum**: part of the abl. absolute from fāmā to perlātā
perlātā: PPP perferō
Titūrī: gen. sg., Quintus Titūrius Sabīnus
- 4 **Huic quoque**: *to this one also*; i.e. to Cicero
quod fuit necesse: *which was inevitable*
- 5 **ut...interciperentur**: *that...*; noun result clause governed by accidit
causā: *for the sake of...*; + preceding genitives
- 6 **discessissent**: *had gone out*; i.e. from the camp, plpf. subjunctive in a relative clause of characteristic
- 7 **His circumventīs**: abl. absolute
magnā manū: *with a great band*; abl. of means with the ablative absolute
- 8 **Nostrī**: *our (soldiers)*
- 9 **conscendunt**: *(and) climb*; asyndeton, the lack of conjunctions suggests that the Romans were acting quickly and decisively
aegrē: *with difficulty*; adv. of aeger
- 10 **adep̄tī**: *having attained*; perfect deponent pple adipiscor
in perpetuum: *for ever*; “into perpetual (time),” supply neuter acc. tempus
fore: *would be*; alternative to futūrum esse, a fut. inf. in ind. discourse governed by cōnfīdēbant, sē is acc. subj.
- 12 **magnīs...praemiīs**: *... (to the messengers)*; abl. absolute; the offer is made to the messengers of the letters
- 13 **sī pertulissent**: *if (the messengers) had carried (the letters) through (to Caesar)*; protasis in a past contrary-to-fact condition
obsessīs...viīs: abl. absolute causal in force, the viae are likely paths or routes
missī: *(the messengers) sent*; PPP mittō
- 14 **noctū**: *at night*; ablative as adverb
causā: *for the sake of*; + preceding genitive
- 15 **incrēdibilī celeritāte**: *with...*; abl. of manner drops “cum” when there is an adjective, here i-stem 3rd declension
quae dēesse operī vidēbantur: *(the things) which seemed to be lacking for the work*; i.e. whatever seemed to be incomplete
- 16 **perficiuntur**: missing antecedent of the relative clause is subject
posterō diē: *on...*; time when
multō: *much...*; “by much,” ablative of degree of difference with comparative maiōribus
maiōribus...copiīs: ablative absolute
- 17 **(et) fossam**: asyndeton
Eādē ratiōne: *by the same method*
quā (ratiōne) prīdiē: *in which (manner) (they resisted) the day before*; i.e. “as on the day before,” relative clause, add ratiōne, resistitur
ab nostrīs resistitur: *our men resisted*; “it is resisted by our (men),” impers. pass. below
- 18 **hoc idem**: *this same thing*; id-dem, neuter singular nom. subject
fit: 3rd sg. pres. fiō; often passive for faciō
reliquīs...diēbus: *in...*; abl. time when

Impersonal Verb Constructions

Impersonal verbs are found in the 3rd sg. and translated with the subject “it.” The passive of an intransitive verb (e.g. ventum est) is often used impersonally with dat. of agent but should be translated actively.

| | | |
|---------------|---|-------------------------------|
| accidit | it happens + ut (noun result clause) | p. 18, 20, 28, 32, 48, 50, 56 |
| constat | it is agreed | p. 18, 34 |
| fās est | it is right + inf. | p. 28 |
| fit | it happens/is done + ut (noun result clause) | p. 56 |
| licet | it is allowed + inf. | p. 10, 32, 46, 52, 58 |
| oportet | it is desirable/fitting/necessary + inf. | p. 6, 18 |
| potest | it is possible | p. 10, 50 |
| videtur | it seems +ut (noun result clause) | p. 52 |
| cōnurgitur | they rise (it is arisen) | p. 46 |
| perventum est | they arrived (it was arrived) | p. 38 |
| pugnārētur | they were fighting (it was fought) | p. 52, 64 |
| pugnātum est | each side fought (it was fought by each side) | p. 14 |
| resistitur | our men resisted (it was resisted by our men) | p. 56 |
| ventum est | they came (it has been come) | p. 16, 38 |

40.5 Nūlla pars nocturnī temporis ad labōrem intermittitur; nōn aegrīs, nōn 1
vulnerātīs facultās quiētis datur. 6. Quaecumque ad proximī dieī
oppugnātiōnem opus sunt, noctū comparantur; multae praeūstae sudēs,
magnus murālium pīlōrum numerus īnstituitur; turrēs contabulantur, pinnae 5
lorīcaeque ex crātibus attexuntur. 7. Ipse Cicerō cum tenuissimā valētūdine
esset, nē nocturnum quidem sibi tempus ad quiētem relinquēbat, ut ultrō
mīlitum concursū ac vōcibus sibi parcere cōgerētur.

41.1 Tunc ducēs prīncipēsque Nerviōrum quī aliquem sermōnis aditum
causamque amīctiae cum Cicerōne habēbant colloquī sēsē velle dīcunt. 2.
Factā potestāte, eadem quae Ambiorīx cum Titūriō ēgerat commemorant: 10
omnem esse in armīs Galliam; 3. Germānōs Rhēnum trānsisse; Caesaris
reliquōrumque hīberna oppugnārī. 4. Addunt etiam dē Sabīnī morte:
Ambiorīgem ostentant fideī faciendae causā. 5. Errāre eōs dīcunt, sī
quidquam ab hīs praesidī spērent, quī suīs rēbus diffīdant; sēsē tamen hōc esse
in Cicerōnem populumque Rōmānum animō, ut nihil nisi hīberna recūsent 15
atque hanc inveterāscere cōnsuētūdinem nōlint: 6. licēre illīs incolumibus per
sē ex hībernis discēdere et quāscumque in partēs velint sine metū proficīscī.

addō, -ere, -didī, -ditum: to bring to, add, 4
aditus, -ūs m.: approach, access, entrance, 2
aeger, -gra, -grum: sick, weary, 4
agō, agere, ēgī, āctum: drive, lead, do, 4
attexō, -ere, -texuī, textum: weave, add on 1
colloquium, -iī n.: conversation, talk, 1
commemorō (1): call to mind, recollect, 1
comparō (1): prepare, get ready, provide, 4
conkursus, -ūs m.: running together, gathering, 1
contabulō (1): to equip with boarded platforms, 1
crātis, -is f.: (wicker) frame, fascines, 1
diffīdō, -ere, diffisum: mistrust, despair (dat.), 1
dux, ducis m./f.: leader, guide, chief, 4
errō (1): to wander, rove, stray, 1
fidēs, ēī f.: faith, honor, 4
incolumis, -e: unscathed, uninjured, safe, 2
īnstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum: set, establish, 3
inveterascō (1): to become old, 1
labor, -ōris m.: labor, hardship, task, 1
lorīca, -ae f.: parapet, breastwork, 1
metus, -ūs f.: dread, fear, 2
mūrālis, -e: of a wall, mural, 1
noctū: by night; abl. as adv. nox, noctis, 4

nocturnus, -a, -um: nocturnal, nightly, 3
nōlō, nolle, nolūī: to refuse, be unwilling, 1
ostentō (1): show (off), display, point out, 1
parcō, -ere, pepercī: to spare, refrain (dat), 2
pīlum, -ī n.: pilum, javelin, 3
pinna, -ae f.: battlement on wall; feather, 1
potestās, -tātis f.: power, ability, capacity, 3
praesidium, -iī n.: guard, protection; assistance, 2
praeūstus, -a, -um: burned at the end, 1
princeps, -cipis m./f.: chief, leader, 4
quīcumque, quae-, quod-: whosoever, 4
quiēs, quiētis f.: rest, repose, sleep, 2
quisquam, quidquam: anyone, anything? 2
recūsō (1): to object to, refuse, reject, 1
sermo, -mōnis m.: conversation, discourse, 3
sudis, -is: stake, spike, 1
tenuis, -e: thin, slender, 1
tunc: then, at that time, 1
ultrō: voluntarily; moreover, beyond, 3
valētūdo, -dinis f.: state of health, health, 1
vōx, vōcis, f.: voice; utterance, word, 4
vulnerō (1): wound, injure, 3

- 1 **nocturnī temporis**: partitive genitive
ad labōrem: *for work*; expressing purpose it modifies the subject not the verb: the line reads “no part of the night time (devoted) for work is interrupted” whereas we would prefer “no part of the night time is interrupted from work”
aegrīs: *to the sick*; dat. indirect object
- 2 **vulnerātīs**: dat. indirect object
quiētis: gen. sg. quiēs
quaecumque...opus sunt: *whatsoever is the work (to be done)*; or “whatsoever is the need”
opus est, “there is a need,” often governs a dat. of interest and abl. of the object wanted; less frequently, as here, there is a subject and **opus** is the predicate
proximī diē: gen. sg.
- 3 **noctū**: *at night*; abl. as adverb
- 4 **contabulantur**: *are equipped with boarded platforms*; the wooden towers are multi-storied with wood floors
- 5 **Ipse Cicerō**: nom. subj. within the cum-clause
cum..esset: *although he was*; impf. subjunctive in a cum-clause which is concessive in force
tenuissimā valētūdine: *of very weak health*; abl. of quality, predicate as **esset**
- 6 **nē...quidem**: *not even*; **nē quidem** emphasizes the intervening word
ad quiētum: *for...*; ad + acc. expresses purpose
ut...cōgerētur: *so that he was compelled*; impf. subj. in a result clause
ultrō: *voluntarily*
- 7 **parcere**: governs a dative
- 8 **aliquem...aditum**: *some (right of) entry into conversation*; the Nervii had previously established a rapport with the Romans that entitled them to approach and speak
- 9 **causamque amīcitiae**: *reason for friendship*
sēsē velle: *that they are willing*; i.e. Nervii, **velle** is a pres. inf. **vōlō**, **colloquī** is a deponent complementary infinitive
- 10 **factā potestāte**: *permission having been given*; “opportunity having been made,” idiom
ēgerat: *had discussed*; “had conducted”
- 11 **trānsisse**: pf. inf. **trānsēō**, **Germānōs** acc. subj.
- 12 **oppugnārī**: *are being assaulted*; pres. pass., **hīberna**, “winter-quarters” is acc. subject
Addunt: *they add*; i.e. “they say in addition”
- 13 **Ambiorigem ostentant**: *they point to Ambiorix*
fideī faciendī: *of forming trust*; gen. sg. gerundive + noun; gerund-gerundive flip
eōs: *that they*; i.e. the Romans, acc. subject
- 14 **quidquam...praesidī**: *any protection*; “anything of protection,” partitive gen.
spērent: *hoped*; impf. subj. in a subordinate clause in indirect discourse
quī...diffidant: pres. subj. in a subordinate clause in indirect discourse
sēsē hōc esse...animō: *that they are of this mind toward...*; i.e. the Nervii, abl. of quality as predicate
- 15 **in**: *toward...*
ut...recūset...nōlint: result clause, present subjunctive **recūsō**, **nōlō**
nihil nisi hīberna: *nothing except winter-quarters*; the Nervii claim to be willing to be friends (see “**amīcitiae**” above) but will not allow the Romans to maintain a military camp in the territory of the Nervii
- 16 **licēre**: *that it is allowed for those...*; indirect disc., the infinitive represents an impersonal verb with governs a dat. of interest
- 17 **per sē**: *by themselves*
discēdere...proficīscī: infinitives, active and deponent, governed by **licēre**
quāscumque in partēs...velint: *in whatever directions they want/would want*; pres. subj. **vōlō**, in a relative clause of characteristic

Indicative Conditions In Secondary Sequence: Direct and Indirect Discourse

Simple Present (Pres., Pres.)

dixī “sī credis, errās.” → dixī sī haec crederēs, tē errāre
I said, “if you believe this, you are wrong” *I said that, if you believed this, you were wrong.*

Future More Vivid (fut. (pf.), fut.):

dixī “sī credēs/credideris, errābis.” → dixī sī haec crederēs, tē errātūrum esse
I said, “if you believe this, you will be wrong” *I said that, if you believed this, you would be wrong.*

Simple Past (past, past):

dixī “sī credēbās/credidistī, errāvistī.” → dixī sī haec crederēs/credidissēs, tē errāvisse.
I said, “if you believed this, you were wrong” *I said that, if you (had) believed this, you had been...*

for more, see p. 84

41.7 Cicerō ad haec ūnum modo respondit: nōn esse cōnsuētūdinem populī 1
Rōmānī accipere ab hoste armātō condiciōnem: 8. sī ab armīs discēdere velint,
sē adiūtōre ūtantur lēgātōsque ad Caesarem mittant; spērāre prō eius iūstitiā,
quae petierint, impetrātūrōs.

42.1 Ab hāc spē repulsī Nerviī vallō pedum IX et fossā pedum XV hīberna 5
cingunt. 2. Haec et superiōrum annōrum cōnsuētūdine ab nōbīs cognōverant
et, quōs dē exercitū habēbant captīvōs, ab eīs docēbantur; 3. sed nūllā
ferramentōrum copiā, quae esset ad hunc ūsum idōnea, gladiīs caespitēs
circumcīdere, manibus sagulīsque terram exhaurīre vidēbantur. 4. Quā quidem 10
ex rē hominum multitūdō cognoscī potuit: nam minus hōrīs tribus mīlium
pedum XV in circuitū mūnitiōnem perfēcērunt 5. reliquīsque diēbus turrēs ad
altitudinem vallī, falcēs testūdinesque, quās īdem captīvī docuerant, parāre ac
facere coepērunt.

43.1 Septimō oppugnātiōnis diē, maximō coōrtō ventō, ferventēs fusilī ex 15
argillā glandēs fundis et fervefacta iacula in casās, quae mōre Gallicō
strāmentīs erant tēctae, iacere coepērunt. 2. Hae celeriter ignem
comprehendērunt et ventī magnitudīne in omnem locum castrōrum
distulērunt.

adiūtōr, -ōris m.: helper, assistant, 2
altitudō, -inis f.: height, depth, altitude, 2
argilla, -ae f.: potter's clay, white clay, 1
armātus, -a, -um: armed, armor-clad, 2
caespes, -pitis m.: turf, sod, grass, 1
captīvus, -a, -um: prisoner, captive, 3
casa, casae f.: house, home, 1
cingō, -ere, cīnxī, cīnctus: surround, 1
circuitus, -ūs m.: circumference, circuit, 1
circumcīdō, -ere, -cīdī: cut around or off, 1
coepī, coepisse, coeptum: to begin, 9
comprehendō, -ere, -dī: seize, arrest; grasp 4
condiciō, -cīōnis f.: arrangement, state, 2
coōrior, -īrī, coōrtus: arise, break out, 2
discō, -ere, -didicī: learn, get to know, 2
differō, -ferre, distulī: carry different ways 2
doceō, -ēre, -uī, -ctus: teach, tell, 4
exhauriō, -īre, -īvī: take away, empty dry, 1
falx, falcis f.: grappling-hook; pruning-hook, 1
ferrāmenta, -ōrum n.: iron tool, implement 1
fervefaciō, -ere, -fēcī: make hot, boil, melt, 1
ferveō, -ēre, ferbuī: glow hot; seethe, boil, 1
fossa, -ae f.: ditch, trench, 2
funda, ae f.: sling, 3
fusilis, -e: molten, liquid, soft, 1

Gallicus, -a, -um: Gallic, 1
gladius, -ī m.: sword, 3
glans, glandis m.: slug, bullet for sling, 1
hora, -ae f.: hour, 4
iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum: to throw, 4
iaculum, -ī n.: javelin, dart, 2
idōneus, -a, -um: suitable, appropriate, 1
ignis, ignis, m.: fire, 4
impetrō (1): obtain, accomplish, 3
iustitia, -ae f.: justice, fairness, equity, 1
modo: only, merely, simply; just now, 4
mōs, mōris m.: custom, manner, law, 4
nōs: we, 1
parō (1): prepare, make ready, 3
perficiō, -ere: complete, accomplish, 3
repellō, -ere, repulī, -pulum: drive back,
repulse, 1
respondeō, -ēre, -dī, -ōnsum: to answer, 3
sagulum, -ī n.: small military cloak, mantle 1
septimus, -a, -um: seventh, 1
strāmentum, -ī n.: straw; saddle, housing, 1
tegō, -ere, texī, tectum: to cover, 1
terra, -ae f.: earth, ground, land, 2
testūdo, -tūdinis f.: tortoise, 2
ventus, ventī m.: wind, 3

- 1 **haec**: *these (things)*; neuter pl.
ūnum: *one (thing)*; neut. acc. sg., Caesar contrasts the multiple points of the Nervii with the single powerful point made by Cicero
modo: *just, only*; an adverb modifying **ūnum**
- 2 **nōn esse**: *it is not.*; ind. discourse; “accipere... condiciōnem” is the infinitive subject of esse and cōsuētūdinem is the acc. predicate
ab armīs discēdere: *to lay down their weapons*; “to depart from their weapons”
sī...velint...ūtantur...mittant: *if they wish...let them employ...and send*; all pres. subj. in a mixed condition; in direct discourse the protasis velint is a fut. indicative and the apodosis verbs are imperatives or jussives, which in ind. discourse become jussives
- 3 **sē adiūtōre ūtantur**: *let them employ him (as) an advocate*; ūtor governs an ablative objects, adiūtōre is an abl. in the predicative position
spērāre: *(that) he hoped*; i.e. Cicero hoped
eius: *his*; i.e. Caesar's
- 4 **quae peti(v)erint**: *(the things) which*; pf. subj. of petō in a relative clause of characteristic, the missing antecedent is object of impertrātūrōs
impertātūrōs (esse): *that (they) would attain*; fut. infinitive; supply Nerviōs as acc. subject
- 5 **vallō...fossā**: ablative of means
pedum: *of feet*; gen. of measure
- 6 **haec**: *these things*; i.e. the vallum and fossa; object of cognōverant
et...et: *both...and*
superiōrum: *of previous*; comparative adj.
ab nōbīs: *from us*; abl. of source, the Nervii had learned their siege strategies from the Romans
- 7 **quōs...docēbantur...ab eīs**: *and by those, whom they were holding from our army as captives*; the antecedent of the relative quōs is the demonstrative eīs; capitīvōs is predicative
- nūllā...copiā**: *since there was...*; “(there being) no supply...”, the construction is either an abl. of means or an abl. absolute, causal in force
- 8 **esset**: *was*; impf. sum in a relative clause of characteristic
ad hunc ūsum: *for...*; expressing purpose
gladiīs: abl. of means
- 9 **circumcidere (et)...exhaurire**: asyndeton, supply conjunction immediately after first inf., lack of conjunction suggests haste or speed
manibus sagulisque: abl. of means
vidēbantur: *they seemed*; + complementary inf.; ‘seem’ is a common translation for videor
quā...ex rē: *from which matter*
- 10 **multitūdō**: i.e. the size of the population, the number of Nervii
cognōscī: pres. pass. inf.
minus hōrīs tribus: *in less than three hours*; comparative adv. + abl. of comparison; the time construction is abl. of time within
- 11 **mīlium pedum XV**: *15,000 feet*; “15 of thousands of feet” gen. of measure
reliquīs diēbus: *within...*; abl. time within
- 12 **ad altitūdinem vallī**: *(in proportion) to...*; the turrēs are as tall as the valla
īdem: eīdem, nom. pl. with captīvī; see line 7
- 14 **Septimō...diē**: *on...*; abl. time when
maximō coōrtō ventō: abl. absolute
ferventēs: modifies glandēs; pres. pple acc. pl.
fusilī: modifies argillā; abl. sg., i-stem 3rd decl.
- 15 **glandēs**: *bullets*; “acorns,” this is the projectile shot from a sling (funda)
fervefacta iacula: *heated javelins*; acc. d.o.
- 16 **erant tēctae**: *tectae erant*, plpf. pass. tegō
hae: *these (houses)*; supply casae
- 17 **comprehēderunt**: *caught*
ventī: nom. pl. subject
magnitūdine: *because of...*; abl. of cause
- 18 **distulērunt**: pf. 3rd pl. differō

Subjunctive Conditions In Secondary Sequence: Direct and Indirect Discourse

Fut. Less Vivid (pres. subj., pres. subj.)

dixī “sī credās, errēs.”

I said, “if you should believe, you would be wrong”

→ dixī sī haec crederēs, tē errātūrum esse

I said that, if you were to believe, you would be...

Present Contrary-to-fact (impf. subj., impf. subj.)

dixī “sī crederēs, errārēs.”

I said, “if you believed, you would be wrong”

→ dixī sī haec crederēs, tē errātūrum esse

*I said that, if you believed, you would be wrong.**

Past Contrary-to-fact (plpf. subj. plpf. subj.)

dixī “sī credissēs, errāvissēs.”

I said, “if you had believed, you would have been...”

→ dixī sī haec credissēs, tē errātūrum fuisse.

I said that, if you had believed, you would have...

43.3 Hostēs maximō clāmōre, sicutī partā iam atque explorātā victōriā, turrēs 1
 testudinēsque agere et scalīs vallum ascendere coepērunt. 4. At tanta mīlitum
 virtūs atque ea praesentia animī fuit ut, cum undique flammā torrērentur
 maximāque tēlōrum multitūdine premerentur suaque omnia impedīmenta 5
 atque omnēs fortūnās cōnflagrāre intellegerent, nōn modo dēmigrandī causā
 dē vallō dēcēderet nēmō, sed paene nē respiceret quidem quisquam, ac tum
 omnēs ācerrimē fortissimēque pugnārent. 5. Hic diēs nostrīs longē
 gravissimus fuit; sed tamen hunc habuit ēventum, ut eō diē maximus
 numerus hostium vulnerārētur atque interficerētur, ut sē sub ipsō vallō
 constīpāverant recessumque prīmīs ultimī nōn dabant. 6. Paulum quidem 10
 intermissā flammā et quōdam locō turrī adactā et contingente vāllum tertiae
 cohortis centuriōnēs ex eō, quō stābant, locō recessērunt suōsque omnēs
 removērunt, nūtū vocibusque hostēs, sī introīre vellent, vocāre coepērunt;
 quōrum prōgredī ausus est nēmō. 7. Tum ex omnī parte lapidibus coniectīs
 dēturbātī, turrisque succēnsa est. 15

ācer, ācris, ācre: sharp, fierce, eager, bitter 2
adigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum: drive to, force to, 1
agō, agere, ēgī, āctum: drive, lead, do, 4
ascendō, -ere, -ī, -ēnsus: ascend, mount 2
audeō, -ēre, ausus sum: dare, venture, 4
centurio, -iōnis m.: centurion, 4
clāmor, clāmoris m.: shout, cry, 2
coepī, coepisse, coeptum: to begin, 9
cōnflagrō (1): be on fire, be consumed, 1
constīpō (1): to crowd together in, stuff, 1
contingō, -ere, tigī, tactum: touch, border, 1
dēcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum: depart, die, 4
dēmigrō (1): to emigrate, depart, 1
dēturbō (1): dislodge, drive off, 1
ēventus, -ūs m.: consequence, result, issue, 2
explorō (1): explore, search; gain, 1
flamma, ae f.: flame, 3
fortūna, -ae f.: fortune, chance, luck, 4
iam: now, already, soon, 4
intelligō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum: understand, 2
introeō, -īre, īī, -itum: go into, enter, 1
lapis, lapidis m.: stone, 1
modo: only, merely, simply; just now, 4

nēmō, nūllius, nēminī, -em, nūllō: no one, 3
nūtus, -ūs m.: a nod, 1
paene: almost, nearly, 2
pariō, -ere, peperī, partum: produce, bear, 1
praesentia, -ae f.: presence, 2
prōgredior, -gredi, -gressus: step forward,
 go forth, advance, 2
quīdam, quaedam, quiddam: a certain, 4
quisquam, quidquam: anyone, anything? 2
recēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus: go back, 1
recessus, -ūs m.: retreat, recess, 1
removeō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus: remove, 2
respiō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum: look back to, 1
scāla, -ae f.: ladder; flight of stairs, stairs, 1
sicut: just as, so as, as if, 2
stō, -āre, steti, stātum: stand still, stop, 3
succendō, -ere, -dī, censum: to set fire under, 2
testūdo, -tūdinis f.: tortoise, 2
torreō, -ēre, -ruī, tostum: burn, parch, 1
ultimus, -a, -um: farthest, extreme, last, 1
vōcō (1): call, name, address, summon, 1
vōx, vōcis, f.: voice; utterance, word, 4
vulnerō (1): wound, injure, 3

- 1 **maximō clāmōre**: *with a very loud shout*; abl. of manner, cum is dropped with the noun is modified by an adjective
sicūfī: *as if...*
partā...atque explorātā: *produced and confirmed*; PPP in an ablative absolute; pariō is the verb “to give birth” and explorō, in addition to the meaning “to search out” means “fixed,” “established” or “confirmed” in Caesar
- 2 **agere**: *to drive forward*
mīlitum: of (our) soldiers; i.e. the Romans
- 3 **ea praesentia animī**: *and such was their presence of mind*; i.e. discipline and focus
ut...nōn modo...dēcēderet, sed...respiceret ...pugnārent: (*so*) *that...*; result clause; impf. subjunctives in secondary sequence
cum...: *although...*; cum-clause is concessive
- 4 **torrērentur...premerentur**: *were being scorched and...were being overwhelmed*; impf. subj. in the same cum-clause
sua: *their*; reflexive adjective
- 5 **impedimenta atque...fortūnās**: acc. subj. of cōnflagāre, ind. disc. governed by intellegent
fortūnās: *personal items*
nōn modo...sed: *not only...but (also)*
- 6 **dēmigrandī causā**: *for the sake of...*; gen. sg. gerund dēmigrō
nē...quidem: *not even*; this construction emphasizes the intervening word, in this case respiceret, which is part of the result clause that started with ut in line 3
- 7 **ācerimē fortissimēque**: superlative adverbs
- 8 **nostrīs**: *for our (men)*; dat. of interest
longē: *far, by far*; adverb
gravissimus: *most grievous*; pred. adjective
hunc...ēventum, ut: *this result, (namely) that...*; ut introduces a noun result clause in apposition to ēventum
eō diē: *on this day*; eō is a demonstrative
- 9 **ut...constipāverant...dabant**: *since...*; ut + indicative, “as” is causal in force
sub: *at the foot of...*; “beneath”
- 10 **prīmīs ultimī nōn dabant**: *the last (soldiers) were not giving (a means for) retreat to the first*; the rows of soldiers were crowded together on the battle line so that the soldiers on the front were pushed by those behind and could not retreat
paulum: *a little*; adverbial acc.
- 11 **intermissā flammā**: abl. absolute
quōdam locō: *in a certain place*; abl. place where; or “to...”dative with compound verb
turrī adactā et contingente: abl. abs., turrī is fem. i-stem abl.; PPP adigō; pres. pple contingō; the turrī is an enemy’s tower
- 12 **tertia cohōrtis**: gen. sg. modifies centuriōnēs
ex eō...locō: *from this place*; demonstrative
quō: *in which (place)*; abl. of place where
- 13 **suōsque omnēs**: *all their men*; acc. d.o.
nūtū vocibusque: *with a nod and words*; abl. of means
sī...vellent: *if they wished*; ind. discourse, impf. subjunctive; in direct discourse a pres. indicative: “if you wish to enter, (enter)!”
- 14 **quōrum...nēmō**: *none of whom*; partitive gen.
prōgredi: present deponent inf., prōgredior
ausus est: *dared*; pf. deponent, audeō is a semi-deponent verb, otherwise active, the perfect tenses are deponent
ex omnī parte: *from every direction*
- 15 **dēturbātī (sunt)**: *(the enemy) was dislodged*; pf. passive, add “sunt” parallel with succēnsa
turrīs: nom. sg. feminine

Purpose Constructions

There are a variety of ways to express purpose in Caesar's *Commentaries*. Notice how Caesar uses purpose clauses (adverbial and relative) in early books and other constructions in later ones. The dat. of purpose is often used with *sum* or with dat. interest in a double dative construction.

| | | | examples |
|------------------------------|----------------------|---|------------------------------|
| ut/nē + subj. | ut/nē audīret | <i>so that he might (not) hear...</i> | pp. 4, 6, 8, 10, 46, 70 |
| quī + subj. | quī audīret | <i>who should hear...</i> | pp. 10 |
| ad + gerund | ad haec audiendum | <i>for hearing...</i> | p. 10, 18 |
| ad + noun + gerundive | ad haec audienda | <i>for these things to be heard</i> | pp. 2-8, 10, 18-20, 24 |
| causā + gerund | audiendī causā | <i>for (the sake of) hearing...</i> | pp. 28, 40, 62 |
| causā + gerundive | audiendī huius causā | <i>for the sake of this to be heard</i> | pp. 20, 58, 68 |
| accusative supine | audītum | <i>to hear...</i> | pp. 22, 38, 52 |
| dative of purpose | salūtī | <i>for safety</i> | p.12, 18-20, 38-44, 52, 64-6 |

44.1 Erant in eā legiōne fortissimī virī, centuriōnēs, quī prīmīs ōrdinibus 1
 appropinquārent, Titus Pullō et Lucius Vorēnus. 2. Hī perpetuās inter sē
 contrōversiās habēbant, quānam anteferrētur, omnibusque annīs dē locīs
 summīs simultātibus contendēbant. 3. Ex hīs Pullō, cum acerrimē ad
 mūnitiōnēs pugnārētur, ‘Quid dubitās,’ inquit, ‘Vorēne? aut quem locum 5
 tuae probandae virtūtis exspectās? 4. Hic diēs dē nostrīs contrōversiīs
 iudicābit.’ Haec cum dīxisset, prōcēdit extrā mūnitiōnēs quaeque pars
 hostium cōnfertissima est vīsa irrumpit. 5. Nē Vorēnus quidem tum sēsē vallō
 continet, sed omnium veritus exīstimātiōnem subsequitur. 6. Mediocrī spatiō
 relictō, Pullō pīlum in hostēs immittit atque ūnum ex multitudine 10
 prōcurrentem trāicit; quō percussō et exanimātō hunc scūtīs prōtegunt, in
 hostem tēla ūniversī coniciunt neque dant regrediendī facultātem. 7.
 Trānsfigitur scūtum Pullonī et verūtum in balteō dēfigitur. 8. Āvertit hic
 casus vāgīnam, et gladium ēdūcere cōnantī dextram morātur manum,
 impedītumque hostēs circumsistunt. 9. Succurrit inimīcus illī Vorēnus et 15
 laborantī subvenit. 10. Ad hunc sē confestim ā Pullone omnis multitudō
 convertit: 11. illum verūto arbitrantur occīsum. Gladiō comminus rem gerit
 Vorēnus atque ūnō interfectō reliquōs paulum prōpellit; 12. dum cupidius
 īnstat, in locum dēiectus inferiōrem concidit. Huic rūsus circumventō fert
 subsidium Pullō, 13. atque ambō incolumēs, complūribus interfectīs, summā 20
 cum laude sēsē intrā mūnitiōnēs recipiunt. 14. Sīc fortūna in contentiōne et
 certāmine utrumque versāvit, ut alter alterī inimīcus auxiliō salutīque esset,
 neque dīiudicārī posset, uter utrī virtūte anteferendus vidērētur.

ācer, ācris, ācre: sharp, fierce, eager, bitter 2
ambo: both, two together, 1
anteferō, -ferre, -tulī: prefer, carry before, 2
appropinquō (1): approach, draw near (dat), 3
auxilium, -ī n.: help, aid, assistance, 3
āvertō, -ēre, āvertī, āversum: turn away, 1
balteus, -ī m.: belt, baldric; girdle, 1
centurio, -iōnis m.: centurion, 4
certāmen, -minis n.: contest, conflict, 1
circumsistō, -ere, -stefī: to surround, 2
comminus: hand to hand, in close combat, 1
concidō, -ere, -cidī, -casum: to fall, 1
confertus, a, um: crowded together, dense, 3
cōnfestim: immediately, 4
contendō, -ere, -ī, -ntus: strive; hasten, 4
contentio, -iōnis f.: struggle, effort, 1
convertō, -ere, -ī, -rsus: turn (about), 1
cupidus, -a, -um: desirous, eager, keen, 2
dēfigō, -ere, -fixī, -fixum: fasten, stick fast, 1
dēiciō, -ere, -ieci, -iectum: throw down 2
dexter, -tera, -terum: right, the right hand, 1

dīiudicō (1): judge, decide (by fighting), 1
dubitō (1): waver, be uncertain, hesitate, 1
ēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus: lead out, 3
exanimō (1): deprive of breath; kill, stun, 2
existimātio, -iōnis f.: judgment, opinion, 1
exspectō (1): look out for, wait for, await, 3
extrā: outside; beyond, outside of (acc), 1
fortūna, -ae f.: fortune, chance, luck, 4
gladius, -ī m.: sword, 3
immittō, -ere, -misi, -missum: launch into, 1
impeditus, -a, -um: hindered, impeded, 3
incolumis, -e: unscathed, uninjured, safe, 2
inferus, -a, -um: below, lower, 3
inimīcus, -a, -um: hostile, unfriendly, 4
inquam: say, 4
instō, -āre, -stifī, press on, take a position, 1
intrā: within, among (+ acc.), 3
irrupō, -ere, -rupī, -ruptum: burst in, 1
iūdicō (1): judge, decide, assess, 2
labōrō (1): work, toil, labor, strive, 2
laus, laudis f.: praise, adulation, 1

mediocris, -e: moderate, ordinary, 1
moror, -ārī, -ātus: delay, linger; detain, 3
occidō, -ere, occidī, occisus: kill, cut down 4
percutiō, -ere, -cussī, cussum: strike hard, 1
perpetuus, -a, -um: constant, everlasting, 4
pīlum, -ī n.: pilum, javelin, 3
prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum; proceed, 3
prōcurrō, -ere, curri, cursum: run forward, 2
prōpellō, -ere, -pellī, -pulsum: drive forward
 or push away, 3
prōtegō, -ere, texī, tectum: to cover over, 1
quīnam quānam quodnam: which, what, 1
regredior, -ī, regressus: step or go back 1
rursus: again, backward, back, 4
scūtum, -ī m.: shield, 2
sīc: thus, in this way, 3

simultās, -tātis f.: clash, feud, rivalry, 1
spatium, -ī n.: space, room, extent, 4
subveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum: come up to,
 aid, relieve, 2
succurrō, -ere, : run under, undergo, occur, 1
Titus, -ī m.: Titus, 4
trāiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum: pierce, cast across, 2
transfigō, -ere, -fixī, fixum: pierce, thrust, 1
tuus, -a, -um: your, yours, 1
ūniversus, -a, -um: all together, whole, 3
uter, utra, utrum: each or one (of two), 2
vāgīna, -ae f.: sheath, scabbard, 1
vereor, -ērī, -itus sum: be afraid, fear; revere, 4
versor (1): be engaged in, move about, deal with, 3
verūtum, -ī n.: javelin, 2
vir, virī m.: man, 4

1 **Erant:** *there were...*

prīmīs ōrdinibus: *the front ranks;* in battle at regular intervals the front row was relieved by the second row and slipped to the rear; Pullo and Vorenius are about take over the first row

3 **quīnam anteferrētur:** *who was to be preferred;* “who was better,” an ind. question in apposition to *contrōversīās*, likely impf. deliberative subj.
omnibusque annīs: *every year;* abl. time when
dē locīs summīs: *concerning the highest positions;* i.e. military promotions and honors

4 **simultātibus:** *in...;* abl. of respect
ācerimē: superlative adverb
ad: *near*

5 **Quid:** *Why...?*

pugnārētur: *they were fighting;* “it was fought (by them),” an impersonal impf. passive
Vorēne: *Vorenius;* vocative direct address
quem locum: *what (better) place;* i.e. “what better opportunity” relative adjective

6 **tuae probandae virtūtis:** *of proving your valor;* “of your valor going to be proven,” a gerundive modifying *virtūtis*; through a gerund-gerundive flip a gerund with *virtūtis* as object

7 **haec:** *these things;* acc. obj. of plpf. subj. *dicō*; Pullo is the subject of all the following verbs
quaque pars...est visa: *and what(ever) side seemed...;* *videor*, here pf. pass. is translated as the linking verb “seems,” missing antecedent is the object of *irrupit*

8 **cōnfertissima:** superlative pred. adj. governed by *visa est* and modifying the feminine sg. *pars*
nē...quidem: *not even...;* this construction emphasizes the intervening word
vallō: *within the wall;* abl. place where

9 **veritus:** *having come to fear...;* pf. dep. pple

omnium exīstimātiōnem: object of *veritus*
mediocrī spatīo relictō: *a usual interval (of time) having been forsaken;* i.e. a short time, having intervened; abl. absolute, i-stem abl.

10 **in hostēs:** *against the enemy*

ūnum: *one (enemy soldier)*

11 **prōcurrentem:** pres. pple. modifies *ūnum*
quō percussō et exanimātō: *this one...;* abl. abs. with PPP *percutiō*, *exanimō*; a relative where English prefers a demonstrative

hunc: *this one;* *hunc* refers to the same as *quō*

12 **regrediendī:** gerund, gen. sg. *regredior*

13 **Pullonī:** *Pullo's;* dat. poss. or dat. of interest
hic casus: *this event;* the scabbard is turned in such a way that it is difficult to draw a sword

14 **gladium edūcere cōnantī:** *for the one trying...;* pres. pple *cōnōr*

15 **illī, laborantī:** dat. objects of compound verbs

17 **illum occisum (esse):** *that that one was killed*

18 **ūnō interfectō:** abl. absolute

cupidius: comparative adverb, *cupidus*

19 **īnstat:** *presses on;* “takes a stand”

dēiectus: *having slipped onto a lower ground*

huic...circumventō: *to this one...;* dat. i.o.

21 **sēsē...recipiunt:** *retreat;* common idiom

22 **utrumque versāvit:** *engaged in both men*

ut...esset, posset, vidērētur: result clause

alter alteri inimicus: *one, hostile to the other,*
auxiliō salūtique esset: *would serve as help and refuge;* “for...,” dat. purpose

23 **uter utrī:** *each one to the other;* dat. sg.

virtūte: *in valor;* abl. of respect

anteferendus: *to be preferred;* “going/worthy to be preferred” gerundive, a predicate of the linking verb *vidērētur*, “seemed” cf. line 3

45.1 Quantō erat in diēs gravior atque asperior oppugnātiō, et maximē quod 1
 magnā parte mīlitum cōfectā vulneribus, rēs ad paucitātem defensōrum
 pervēnerat, tantō crebriōrēs litterae nūntiūque ad Caesarem mittēbantur;
 quōrum pars dēprehēnsa in conspectū nostrōrum mīlitum cum cruciātū
 necabātur. 2. Erat ūnus intus Nervius nōmine Verticō, locō nātus honestō, 5
 quī ā prīmā obsidiōne ad Cicerōnem perfūgerat suamque eī fidem
 praestiterat. 3. Hic servō spē libertātis magnisque persuādet praemiīs, ut
 litterās ad Caesarem dēferat. 4. Hās ille in iaculō illigātās effert et Gallus inter
 Gallōs sine ūllā suspiciōne versātus ad Caesarem pervenit. 5. Ab eō dē
 periculīs Cicerōnis legiōnisque cognōscitur. 10

46.1 Caesar, acceptīs litterīs, hōrā circiter XI diēi statim nūntium in
 Bellovacōs ad M. Crassum quaestōrem mittit, cuius hīberna aberant ab eō
 milia passuum XXV; 2. iubet mediā nocte legiōnem proficiscī celeriterque ad
 sē venīre. 3. Exit cum nūntiō Crassus. Alterum ad Gaium Fabium lēgātum
 mittit, ut in Atrebātium finēs legiōnem adducat, quā sibi iter faciendum 15
 sciēbat. 4. Scribit Labiēnō, sī reī pūblicaē commodō facere posset, cum legiōne
 ad finēs Nerviorum veniat. Reliquam partem exercitūs, quod paulō aberat
 longius, non putat exspectandam; equitēs circiter quadringentōs ex proximīs
 hibernīs colligit.

addūcō, -ere, duxī, ductum: draw/lead to, 4
asper, aspera, asperum: rough, harsh, violent, 1
Atrebas, Atrebātis, m.: Atrebates, 3
Bellovacī, -ōrum m.: Bellovaci (in Belgīs), 1
colligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum: gather, collect, 1
commodum, -ī n.: convenience, advantage, interest, 1
conficiō, -ere: to exhaust, finish, 4
conspectus, -ūs, m.: look, sight, view, 2
creber, -bra, -bum: crowded, frequent, 1
cruciātus, -ūs m.: torture, torment, 2
dēfensor, -ōris m.: defender, protector, 1
dēprehendō, -ere, -dī, -ēnsus: seize, catch, 1
effero, -ferre, -tulī, ēlātus: raise, lift up 4
exeō, -īre, -īī (īvī), -itus: go out, 4
exspectō (1): look out for, wait for, await, 3
Fabius, -ī m.: Fabius, 3
fidēs, eī f.: faith, honor, 4
Gaius, -ī m.: Gaius, 4
honestus, -a, -um: respectable, honorable, 1
hora, -ae f.: hour, 4
iaculum, -ī n.: javelin, dart, 2
inligō, -āre, -āvī, illigātum: tie or bind on, 1

intus: within, inside, 1
libertās, -tātis f.: freedom, liberation, 2
M.: Marcus, 3
medius -a -um: in the middle of, 3
nascor, nascī, nātus sum: be born, grow, 3
necō (1): kill, slay, destroy, 1
nōmen, nōminis n.: name, 2
obsidio, -iōnis f.: siege, blockade, 2
paucitās, -tātis f. (1): fewness, scarcity, 3
perfugiō, -ere, -fūgī: flee, take refuge, 1
putō (1): to think, imagine, 3
quadringenti: four hundred, 2
quaestor, -oris m.: quaestor, 3
sciō, -īre, -īvī (īī), -ītus: know (how), 2
scribō, -ere, -scripsī, scriptum: write, 2
servus, -ī, m.: slave, 1
statim: immediately, at once, 4
suspicio, -ciōnis f.: mistrust, suspicion, 4
versor (1): be engaged in, move about, deal with, 3
Verticō, -ōnis m.: Vertico, 1
vulnus, -eris n.: wound, blow, 3

- 1 **Quantō...gravior...tantō crēbriōrēs**: *the more grievous...the more frequent*; “by as much...by so much,” correlatives, ablative of the degree of difference with comparative adjective
in diēs: *daily*
maximē: *especially*; “very greatly”
magnā...vulneribus: ablative absolute
- 3 **pervēnerat**: *had arrived at*; *rēs* is subject
nuntii: *messengers*
quōrum pars: *some of which (messengers)*; partitive gen.,
- 4 **dēprehēnsa**: *taken*; modifies fem. sg. pars
- 5 **Erat**: *there was*
intus: *within*; i.e. within Cicero’s camp
nōmine: *by name*; “in name,” abl. of respect
locō...honestō: *in an honorable station*; status
eī: *to him*; i.e. to Cicero, dat. sg.
- 6 **praestiterat**: *had shown, had performed*
- 7 **Hic**: *this one*; i.e. Vertico
servō: *slave*; dat. i.o. of *persuādeō*
spē, praemiis: abl. means
ut...dēferat: *that...*; ind. command with present subj. governed by *persuādet*
- 8 **ille**: *that one*; i.e. the slave
hās: *these*; fem. pl. antecedent *litterae*
Gallus...versātus: *as a Gaul engaged...*
- 9 **ab eō**: *by him*; by the slave, abl. of agent
- 10 **cognōscitur**: *he learned*; “it is known by him”
- 11 **acceptis litteris**: abl. absolute
hōrā...XI: *at around the 11th hour*; time when, approximately 5 p.m.
diē: partitive genitive
- 12 **cuius**: gen. relative pronoun *quī, quae, quod*
aberant ab eō: *were...away from him*; i.e. from Caesar
- 13 **milia passuum XXV**: *25 miles*; “thousands of paces,” acc. of extent of space
mediā nocte: abl. of time when
proficisci: pres. deponent inf.
- 14 **cum nūntiō**: *with the messenger*; or “with (the arrival of) the message”
Alterum: *another*; modifies *lēgātum*
- 15 **ut...adducat**: *that...*; ind. command with pres. subj.
finēs: *territory*
quā: *where*
sibi iter faciendum (esse): *that a journey had to be made by him*; “a journey was going to be made by him” ind. discourse, a passive periphrastic (gerundive + form of sum) with dat. of agent expressing necessity or obligation
- 16 **Labiēnō**: dat. i.o.
sī...posset: *if*; impf. subj. *possum*
reī publicae commōdō: *for the interest of the republic*; dat. purpose or, if *reī* is dat. not gen., double dative (dat. of interest & dat. purpose)
(ut) cum legiōne veniat: *that...*; ind. command with pres. subj. governed by *scribit*
finēs: *territory*
- 17 **exercitūs**: gen. sg.
paulō: *a little*; “by a little,” abl. degree of difference with comparative *longius*
- 18 **longius**: *farther*; comparative adverb
expectandam (esse): *must be waited for*; “is going to be waited for,” passive periphrastic (gerundive + esse) expresses obligation or necessity; add *esse*, in indirect disc. governed by *putat*; fem. sg. *partem* is acc. subject

Compound Verbs: the Importance of Prefixes

Notice how the spelling of many prefixes, especially *ad-* and *con-*, change through assimilation and assume the consonant at the begins of the verb. Compounds often govern a dative instead of an accusative object.

| | | | |
|--------|----------------------|---|--|
| a/ab- | away from | mittō, -ere : send, 20 | cēdō, ere : withdraw, move, 2 |
| ad- | to, toward | āmittō : lose, let go away, 2 | accēdō : approach, 5 |
| con- | together with | admittō : admit, allow, 2 | concedō : withdraw, yield, 2 |
| dē- | from, down from | committō : begin, entrust, 4 | dēcedō : depart, withdraw, 4 |
| dis- | different directions | dēmittō : send down, sink, 1 | discēdō : go away, depart, 9 |
| ē/ex- | out from | dīmittō : send away, 3 | excēdō : go out, depart, 3 |
| in- | in, on, into | ēmittō : send off, 1 | incēdō : walk, march, 0 |
| inter- | between | immittō : launch into, 1 | intercedō : come between, 1 |
| per- | through | intermittō : interrupt, leave off, 5 | |
| prae- | before, ahead | permittō : let through, allow, 0 | praecedō : surpass, go ahead, 1 |
| pro- | forth, in advance | praemittō : send ahead, 2 | prōcedō : go forth, 3 |
| re- | back, again | prōmittō : send forth, undertake, 0 | recēdō : go back, withdraw, 1 |
| sub- | (up from) under | remittō : send back, 4 | succēdō : go up, approach, 3 |
| | | submitō : send up, 1 | |

47.1 Hōrā circiter tertiā ab antecursōribus dē Crassī adventū certior factus eō 1
 diē milia passuum XX procēdit. 2. Crassum Samarobrīvae praeficit
 legiōnemque attribuit, quod ibi impedīmenta exercitūs, obsidēs cīvitātum,
 litterās pūblicās frūmentumque omne quod eō tolerandae hiemis causā 5
 dēvexerat relinquebat. 3. Fabius, ut imperātum erat, nōn ita multum morātus
 in itinere cum legiōne occurrit. 4. Labiēnus, interitū Sabīnī et caede
 cohortium cognitā, cum omnēs ad eum Treverōrum cōpiae vēnissent,
 veritus, sī ex hībernīs fugae similem profectiōnem fēcisset, ut hostium
 impetum sustinēre posset, praesertim quōs recentī victōriā efferrī scīret,
 litterās Caesarī remittit, quantō cum periculō legiōnem ex hībernīs ēductūrus 10
 esset; rem gestam in Eburiōnibus perscrībit; docet omnēs equitātūs
 peditātūsque cōpiās Treverōrum tria milia passuum longē ab suīs castrīs
 cōnsēdisse.

antecursor, -ōris m.: scout, advanced guard, 1
attribuō, -ere, -uī, -utum: allot, assign to, add, 1
caedēs, caedis f.: murder, slaughter, killing 2
consīdeō, -ēre, -sēdī: to sit down, settle, 2
dēvehō, -ere, -vēxī, -vectum: carry away, 1
doceō, -ēre, -uī, -ctus: teach, tell, 4
ēducō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus: lead out, 3
effero, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus: raise, lift up 4
Fabius, -ī m.: Fabius, 3
fuga, -ae f.: flight, haste, exile, speed, 3
hiems, hiemis f.: winter, storm, 4
hora, -ae f.: hour, 4
impetus, -ūs m.: attack, onset, assault, 7
interitus, -ūs m.: destruction, annihilation, 1
ita: so, thus, 7
moror, -ārī, -ātus: delay, linger; detain, 3

occurrō, -ere: run to meet, attack, 2
peditātus, -ūs m.: infantry, 3
perscrībō, -ere, -scripsī: describe thoroughly, 1
praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum: set (acc) over (dat),
 put (acc) in charge over (dat), 2
praesertim: especially, particularly, 2
prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum; proceed, 3
recens, recentis adj.: new, fresh, recent, 1
remittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum: send back, 4
Samarobrīva, -ae f.: Samarobriva, 2
sciō, -īre, -īvī (ī), -ītus: know (how), 2
similis, simile: similar to, like (dat.), 1
tolerō (1): endure, sustain, bear, support, 1
Trēveri, -ōrum m.: Treveri (Germanic), 4
vereor, -ērī, -ītus: be afraid, fear; revere, 4

- 1 **Hōrā...tertiā**: *at...*; abl. of time when
ab antecursōribus: abl. of agent
certior factus: *having been informed*; “having been made more certain,” a common idiom in Caesar, certior is a comparative adj., here a predicate of PPP of faciō
- 2 **eō diē**: *on that day*; time when, demonstrative
milia passuum XX: *for 20 miles*; “twenty thousands of paces,” acc. of extent of space
praeficit: *put (acc) in charge over (dat.)*
- 3 **quod**: *because...*
- 4 **quod...dēvexerat**: *which...*; relative pronoun, frūmentum is the antecedent
eō: *to there*; “to that place,” adverb
tolerandae hiemis: gerund-gerundive flip, translate the gerundive as a gerund and gen. hiemis as an acc. object of tolerandae; the entire construction is an obj. of the preposition causā
- 5 **ut**: *as*; ut + indicative, as often “as” or “when”
imperātum erat: *it...*; impersonal plpf. pass.
multum: *much*; inner acc. or adverbial acc.
- 6 **interitū...cognitā**: abl. absolute
- 7 **cum...vēnisset**: *when...*; plpf. subjunctive
cōpiae: *troops*; modified by omnēs
- 8 **veritus...ut...posset**: *having begun to fear that he would not be able*; inceptive pf. dep. pple
- vereor governs a fearing clause (nē - that, ut - that not) with impf. subj. in secondary seq.
fugae: *to flight*; governed by similem
- 8 **sī...fēcisset**: *if he had made*; plpf. subjunctive, introducing a mixed contrafactual condition
- 9 **quōs...scīret**: *since he knew that those were elated by their recent victory*; quōs + impf. subjunctive is a relative clause causal in sense, equivalent to a cum-clause (quōs = cum eōs) causal in sense; cf. quī in V.33; pass. inf. efferō
recentī: i-stem ablative with victōriā
- 10 **quantō...periculō**: (*stating*) *with how much danger...*; introducing an ind. question with an implicit verb of speaking in “litterās... remittit”
ēductūrus esset: *would lead out*; “was going to lead out,” fut. periphrastic (future pple + sum) in primary sequence which in dir. disc would be “ēductūrus erat”
- 11 **gestam**: *carried out*; PPP gerō
in Eburionibus: *among the Eburiones*
omnēs...copiās: *that all...*; acc. subject of pf. infinitive cōnsēdisse in ind. discourse
- 12 **tria milia passuum**: *three miles*; “three thousand paces,” acc. of extent of space
longē: *far*; adverb

Deponent Verbs in the Readings

- adgredior, -ī, aggressus sum**: attack, 1
ēgredior, -ī, -gressum: go out, disembark, 5
regredior, -ī, regressum: step or go back 1
adipiscor, -ī, adeptum: get, obtain, reach, 1
arbitror, arbitrārī, arbitrātum: to judge, 10
auxilior, -ārī, auxiliātum: to help, assist, 1
confiteor, -ērī, -fessum: admit, reveal, 1
cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātum: to try, 6
cunctor, -ārī, -ātum: to delay, hesitate 1
frūmentor, -ārī: to forage, fetch corn, 1
hortor, -ārī, hortātum: encourage, urge, 2
adhortor, -ārī, -ātum: encourage, urge on, 1
cohortor, -ārī, cohortātum: encourage, incite, 3
lābor, lābī, lapsum: glide, slide, slip, 1
loquor, -ī, locūtum: speak, say, 2
colloquor, -quī, -locūtum: to converse, 4
medeor, -ērī: heal, cure; assist, alleviate, 1
mercor, -ārī, mercātum: to trade, traffic, 1
moderor, -ārī, -ātum: restrain, regulate, 1
molior, -īrī, molītum: set into motion, stir, 1
moror, -ārī, -ātum: delay, linger; detain, 3
nanciscor, nanciscī, nactum: obtain, meet, 1
nascor, nascī, nātum: be born, grow, 3
- nītor, nīfī, nīsus sum**: to struggle, lean on, 1
contestor, -ārī, -ātum: to call as witness, 1
orior, -īrī, ortum: arise, rise, spring, 3
adorior, -īrī, -ortus sum: rise up, attack, 2
coōrior, -īrī, coōrtum: arise, break out, 2
patior, -ī, passum: suffer, endure; allow, 2
polliceor, -cērī, -cītum: promise, offer, 2
potior, -īrī, -ītum: gain, win (*abl.*), 2
proelior, -ārī, -ātum: to give battle, fight, 1
proficiscor, -ī, -fectum: set out, depart, 23
profiteor, -ērī, -fessum: profess, declare, 1
prosequor, sequī, secūtum: follow, pursue 1
queror, querī, questum: complain, lament, 1
sequor, -ī, secūtum: follow, pursue, 4
consequor, -ī, secūtum: follow; pursue 1
exsequor, sequī, secūtum: follow/carry out 1
insequor, -sequī, -secūtum: follow, ensue, 1
subsequor, -ī, secūtum: follow after, behind 7
suspicior, -ārī, suspicātum: to suspect, 3
ulciscor, -ī, ultum: avenge, take vengeance 1
ūtor, -ī, ūsus sum: use, employ (*abl.*), 5
vagor, -ārī, -ātum: wander, roam to and fro, 1
vereor, -ērī, -itum: be afraid, fear; reverse, 4

48.1 Caesar, cōnsiliō eius probātō, etsī opiniōne trium legiōnum dēiectus ad 1
 duās redierat, tamen ūnum commūnis salūtis auxilium in celeritāte ponēbat.
 Vēnit magnīs itineribus in Nerviōrum finēs. 2. Ibi ex captīvīs cognoscit, quae
 apud Cicerōnem gerantur, quantōque in periculō rēs sit. 3. Tum cuidam ex
 equitibus Gallīs magnīs praemiīs persuādet utī ad Cicerōnem epistolam 5
 dēferat. 4. Hanc Graecīs conscriptam litterīs mittit, nē, interceptā epistolā,
 nostra ab hostibus cōnsilia cognōscantur. 5. Sī adire non possit, monet ut
 trāgulam cum epistolā ad āmentum deligātā intrā mūnitiōnem castrōrum
 abiciat. 6. In litterīs scribit sē cum legiōnibus profectum celeriter adfore;
 hortātur ut pristīnam virtūtem retineat. 7. Gallus perīculum veritus, ut erat 10
 praeceptum, trāgulam mittit. 8. Haec cāsū ad turrim adhaesit neque ab nostrīs
 bīduō animadversa tertiō diē ā quōdam mīlite cōnspicitur, dempta ad
 Cicerōnem dēfertur. 9. Ille perlectam in conventū mīlitum recitat
 maximāque omnēs laetitiā adfcit. 10. Tum fūmī incendiōrum procul
 vidēbantur; quae rēs omnem dubitātiōnem adventūs legiōnum expulit. 15

abiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum: throw away, 2
adeō, -ire, ī(vī, itus: approach, encounter, 2
adfiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum: affect, afflict, 3
adhaereō, -ēre, -haesī: cling to, stick to, 1
adsum, -esse, -fuī: be present, assist, (dat.), 3
āmentum, -ī n.: strap, leather thong, 1
auxilium, -ī n.: help, aid, assistance, 3
biduum, -ī n.: a period of two days, 2
captivus, -a, -um: prisoner, captive, 3
conscribō, -ere, -scripsī: enlist, enroll, 2
conspiciō, -ire: catch sight of, perceive, behold 1
conventus, -ūs m.: meeting, assembly, 1
dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum: fail, give out, 3
dēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum: throw down, dislodge, 1
dēligō (1): to tie down, fasten, 2
dēmō, -ere, dempsi, demptum: take down, 1
dubitatio, -tīōnis f.: wavering, uncertainty, 1
epistula, -ae f.: letter, missive, 3
expellō, ere, pulī, pulsum: drive out, expel 2
fūmus, -ī m.: smoke, vapor, steam, 1

Graecus, -a, -um: Greek, 2
hortor, -ārī, hortātum: encourage, urge, 2
incendium, -ī n.: fire, conflagration, 1
incipiō, -ere, incēpī, inceptum: begin, 1
intrā: within, among (+ acc.), 3
laetitia, -ae f.: gladness, joy, delight, 1
moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum: to warn, advise, 2
opiniō, -niōnis f.: opinion, thought, belief, 2
perlegō, -ere, -lēgī, -lectum: survey, scan, 1
praecipio, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum: receive in
 advance, instruct, admonish, 2
pristinus, -a, -um: former, previous, earlier 2
procul: far, from a distance, from afar, 3
quīdam, quaedam, quiddam: a certain, 4
recitō (1): recite, read aloud, 1
redeō, -ire, -ivī: go back, return, 1
retineō, -ēre, -uī, tentum: hold back, keep, 2
scribō, -ere, -scripsī, scriptum: write, 2
trāgula, -ae f.: tragula (a Gallic javelin) 3
vereor, -ērī, -itus: be afraid, fear; revere, 4

- 1 **cōnsiliō...probātō**: abl. absolute
etsī: *even if...*; i.e. although
opiniōne: *from the hope for...*; “from the thought,” abl. of separation; Caesar had hoped for three legions but received only two
dēiectus: *disappointed*; i.e. dejected, dispirited
- 2 **duās**: *duās legiōnēs*
redierat: plpf. *redeō*
ūnum...auxilium: *a single source*
- 3 **magnīs itineribus**: *in long marches*; i.e. forced marches; 25-30 miles per day
finēs: *borders*
quae...gerantur: *what (things) are carried on*; ind. question with pres. subjunctive
- 4 **apud Cicerōnem**: *in Cicero’s camp*
quantō in...: *in how great...*; cf. p. 68, (V.47.4)
ind. question with pres. subj. of sum
cuidam: *a certain...*; cui-dam, dat. indirect obj. quīdam of persuādet
- 5 **utī...dēferat**: *that...*; utī is an alternative to ut, here in an indirect command governed by persuādeō; pres. subj. dēferō
- 6 **hanc**: *this (letter)*
Graecīs...litterīs: *with Greek letters*; in Greek or perhaps Latin in Greek script
nē...cognōscantur: *that...may not...*; negative purpose clause; pres. subj. in primary sequence
- 7 **possit**: *he is able*; a subordinate clause in ind. discourse, replacing indicative with pres. subj.
ut...abiciat: *that...*; ind. command governed by monet; pres. subj. in primary sequence
- 8 **āmentum**: a leather loop on a javelin that allows for better aim and distance when the javelin is thrown
- 9 **sē...adfore**: *that he will be present...*; adfore is an alternative for adfutūrum esse, fut. inf. of adsum
profectum: PPP proficīscor
- 10 **ut...retineat**: *that...*; ind. command
veritus: *having begun to fear*; inceptive pf. dep. pple vereor governs periculum as object
ut erat praeceptum: *as it had been instructed*; ut + indicative
- 11 **mittit**: *launches*; i.e. throws
haec: *this (javelin)*; supply nom. sg. trāgula
cāsū: *by chance*
- ab nostrīs**: *by our (men)*; abl. agent
- 12 **bīduō**: *in...*; abl. time when or within
animadversa: PPP modifying haec (trāgula)
tertiō diē: abl. time when
- 13 **perlectam (epistulam)...recitat**: *that one recites the letter, once read through...*; English prefers two main verbs where Latin often prefers to make the first of two actions into a PPP: “that one read through the letter and then recited it...”
- 14 **adficit**: *affects (acc) with (abl.)*; abl. means
- 15 **quae rēs**: *a matter which...*; quae modifies fem. sg. rēs, the antecedent of the relative clause, in apposition to fūmī (or the entire clause)

The Remainder of Book V

Cicero and his camp are hopeful when they see the fires as a sign of Caesar’s approach. Confronted with 60,000 Gauls, Caesar forms a camp. After a brief skirmish, he pretends to retreat into his fortifications, and when the Gauls follow him, he orders his cavalry and then his foot soldiers to rush out of the gates and attack the enemy. The Gauls are taken by surprise, and those who are not immediately killed flee into the nearby swamps and forests.

Caesar hastens to Cicero’s camp, where he learns that nine of every ten soldiers has been wounded in the siege. Caesar praises both Cicero and the legion and informs Cicero about the fate of Sabinus and Cotta’s legion and in particular the recklessness of Sabinus.

When Labienus, encamped 60 miles away, learns of Caesar’s victory, Indutiomarus, leader of the Treveri, initially decides to stop preparations to attack Labienus and to withdraw. But as other Gauls learn about Sabinus’ defeat and begin to make preparations to fight, Indutiomarus returns with a much larger force. With the aid of cavalry, Labienus is able to surprise the Gauls and kill Indutiomarus. After this episode the Gauls return to their homes, and the uprising comes to an end.

| | | | | | | |
|------|-----------------------------|------------------|----------------------------|------------------|----------------------------|-------------------|
| | <u>1st Declension</u> | | <u>2nd Declension (m.)</u> | | <u>2nd Declension (n.)</u> | |
| Nom. | <i>copia</i> | <i>copiae</i> | <i>legatus</i> | <i>legatī</i> | <i>proelium</i> | <i>proelia</i> |
| Gen. | <i>copiae</i> | <i>copiārum</i> | <i>legatī</i> | <i>legatōrum</i> | <i>proeliī</i> | <i>proeliōrum</i> |
| Dat. | <i>copiae</i> | <i>copiīs</i> | <i>legatō</i> | <i>legatīs</i> | <i>proeliō</i> | <i>proeliīs</i> |
| Acc. | <i>copiam</i> | <i>copiās</i> | <i>legatum</i> | <i>legatōs</i> | <i>proelium</i> | <i>proelia</i> |
| Abl. | <i>copiā</i> | <i>copiīs</i> | <i>legatō</i> | <i>legatīs</i> | <i>proeliō</i> | <i>proeliīs</i> |
| | <u>3rd Declension (m/f)</u> | | | | <u>3rd Declension (n.)</u> | |
| Nom. | <i>mīles</i> | <i>mīlites</i> | | | <i>iter</i> | <i>itinerā</i> |
| Gen. | <i>mīlitis</i> | <i>mīlitum</i> | | | <i>itineris</i> | <i>itinerum</i> |
| Dat. | <i>mīlitī</i> | <i>mīlitibus</i> | | | <i>itinerī</i> | <i>itineribus</i> |
| Acc. | <i>mīlitem</i> | <i>mīlitēs</i> | | | <i>iter</i> | <i>itinerā</i> |
| Abl. | <i>mīlite</i> | <i>mīlitibus</i> | | | <i>itinerē</i> | <i>itineribus</i> |
| | <u>4th Declension (m/f)</u> | | | | <u>4th Declension (n.)</u> | |
| Nom. | <i>manus</i> | <i>manūs</i> | | | <i>cornū</i> | <i>cornua</i> |
| Gen. | <i>manūs</i> | <i>manuum</i> | | | <i>cornūs</i> | <i>cornuum</i> |
| Dat. | <i>manuī</i> | <i>manibus</i> | | | <i>cornū</i> | <i>cornuibus</i> |
| Acc. | <i>manum</i> | <i>manūs</i> | | | <i>cornū</i> | <i>cornua</i> |
| Abl. | <i>manū</i> | <i>manibus</i> | | | <i>cornū</i> | <i>cornuibus</i> |
| | <u>5th Declension (m/f)</u> | | | | | |
| Nom. | <i>rēs</i> | <i>rēs</i> | | | | |
| Gen. | <i>rēi</i> | <i>rērum</i> | | | | |
| Dat. | <i>rēi</i> | <i>rēbus</i> | | | | |
| Acc. | <i>rem</i> | <i>rēs</i> | | | | |
| Abl. | <i>rē</i> | <i>rēbus</i> | | | | |

Selected Pronouns

| | | | | | | |
|------|--------------|-----------------------|--------------|-----------------------|--------------|-----------------------|
| Nom. | <i>is</i> | <i>he</i> | <i>ea</i> | <i>she</i> | <i>id</i> | <i>it</i> |
| Gen. | <i>eius</i> | <i>his</i> | <i>eius</i> | <i>her</i> | <i>eius</i> | <i>its</i> |
| Dat. | <i>eī</i> | <i>to/for him</i> | <i>eī</i> | <i>to/for her</i> | <i>eī</i> | <i>to/for it</i> |
| Acc. | <i>eum</i> | <i>him</i> | <i>eam</i> | <i>her</i> | <i>id</i> | <i>it</i> |
| Abl. | <i>eō</i> | <i>with/from him</i> | <i>eā</i> | <i>with/from her</i> | <i>eō</i> | <i>with/from it</i> |
| Nom. | <i>eī</i> | <i>they</i> | <i>eae</i> | <i>they</i> | <i>ea</i> | <i>they</i> |
| Gen. | <i>eōrum</i> | <i>their</i> | <i>eārum</i> | <i>their</i> | <i>eōrum</i> | <i>their</i> |
| Dat. | <i>eīs</i> | <i>to/for them</i> | <i>eīs</i> | <i>to/for them</i> | <i>eīs</i> | <i>to/for them</i> |
| Acc. | <i>eōs</i> | <i>them</i> | <i>eās</i> | <i>them</i> | <i>ea</i> | <i>them</i> |
| Abl. | <i>eīs</i> | <i>with/from them</i> | <i>eīs</i> | <i>with/from them</i> | <i>eīs</i> | <i>with/from them</i> |

**is, ea, id* is a demonstrative and in Caesar is often translated as “this/that” in the singular and “these/those” in the plural.

| | | | | | | | |
|------|--------------|--------------|--------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|--------------------------------|
| Nom. | <i>quī</i> | <i>quae</i> | <i>quod</i> | <i>quī</i> | <i>quae</i> | <i>quae</i> | <i>who, which, that</i> |
| Gen. | <i>cuius</i> | <i>cuius</i> | <i>cuius</i> | <i>quōrum</i> | <i>quārum</i> | <i>quōrum</i> | <i>whose, of whom/which</i> |
| Dat. | <i>cuī</i> | <i>cuī</i> | <i>cuī</i> | <i>quibus</i> | <i>quibus</i> | <i>quibus</i> | <i>to whom/which</i> |
| Acc. | <i>quem</i> | <i>quam</i> | <i>quod</i> | <i>quōs</i> | <i>quās</i> | <i>quae</i> | <i>whom, which, that</i> |
| Abl. | <i>quō</i> | <i>quā</i> | <i>quō</i> | <i>quibus</i> | <i>quibus</i> | <i>quibus</i> | <i>by/with/from whom/which</i> |

| | | | | | | | | |
|-------|---------|---------|---------|------------------------|-------|-------|-------|------------------------|
| Nom. | ille | illa | illud | <i>that</i> | hic | haec | hoc | <i>this</i> |
| Gen. | illīus | illīus | illīus | <i>of that</i> | huius | huius | huius | <i>of this</i> |
| Dat. | illī | illī | illī | <i>to/for that</i> | huic | huic | huic | <i>to/for this</i> |
| Acc. | illum | illam | illud | <i>that</i> | hunc | hanc | hoc | <i>this</i> |
| Abl. | illō | illā | illō | <i>with/from that</i> | hōc | hāc | hōc | <i>b/w/f this</i> |
| <hr/> | | | | | | | | |
| Nom. | illī | illae | illa | <i>those</i> | hī | hae | haec | <i>these</i> |
| Gen. | illōrum | illārum | illōrum | <i>of those</i> | hōrum | hārum | hōrum | <i>of these</i> |
| Dat. | illīs | illīs | illīs | <i>to those</i> | hīs | hīs | hīs | <i>to these</i> |
| Acc. | illōs | illās | illa | <i>those</i> | hōs | hās | haec | <i>these</i> |
| Abl. | illīs | illīs | illīs | <i>with/from those</i> | hīs | hīs | hīs | <i>with/from these</i> |

| | | | | | | | | |
|------|-------------------|--------------------------------|------|------|--------|--------|--------|--|
| | reflexive pronoun | possessive reflexive adjective | | | | | | |
| Nom. | --- | suus | sua | suum | suī | suae | sua | |
| Gen. | suī | suī | suae | suī | suōrum | suārum | suōrum | |
| Dat. | sibi | suō | suae | suō | suīs | suīs | suīs | |
| Acc. | sē | suum | suam | suum | suōs | suās | sua | |
| Abl. | sē | suō | suā | suō | suīs | suīs | suīs | |

Adjectives and Adverbs

| Decl. | Positive | Comparative | Superlative |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|---|--|
| 1 st /2 nd | altus, -a, -um <i>high (deep)</i> | altior, altius <i>higher (deeper)</i> | altissimus, -a, -um <i>highest, very high (deepest)</i> |
| 3 rd | fortis, forte <i>brave</i> | fortior, fortius <i>braver, more brave</i> | fortissimus, -a, -um <i>bravest, most brave, very brave</i> |
| 1 st /2 nd | altē <i>deeply</i> | altius <i>more deeply</i> | altissimē <i>very deeply</i> |
| 3 rd | fortiter <i>bravely</i> | fortius <i>more bravely</i> | fortissimē <i>very bravely</i> |

Irregular Adjectives and Adverbs

| Positive | Comparative | Superlative |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| bonus, -a, -um <i>good</i> | melior, melius <i>better</i> | optimus, -a, -um <i>best</i> |
| magnus, -a, -um <i>great</i> | maior, maius <i>greater</i> | maximus, -a, -um <i>greatest</i> |
| parvus, -a, -um <i>small</i> | minor, minus <i>smaller</i> | minimus, -a, -um <i>smallest</i> |
| multus, -a, -um | ---, plus | plurimus, -a, -um |

amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum: to love

| | active | | translation | passive | | translation |
|-------------------|----------|------------|--------------------------|------------|---------------|-------------------------------|
| Indicative | | | | | | |
| Pres. | amō | amāmus | <i>I love</i> | amor | amāmur | <i>I am (being) loved</i> |
| | amās | amātis | | amāris | amāminī | |
| | amat | amant | | amātur | amantur | |
| Impf. | amābam | amābāmus | <i>I was loving</i> | amābar | amābāmur | <i>I was (being) loved</i> |
| | amābās | amābātis | | amābāris | amābāminī | |
| | amābat | amābant | | amābātur | amābantur | |
| Fut. | amābō | amābimus | <i>I will love</i> | amābor | amābimur | <i>I will be loved</i> |
| | amābis | amābitis | | amāberis | amābiminī | |
| | amābit | amābunt | | amābitur | amābuntur | |
| Perf. | amāvī | amāvimus | <i>I have loved</i> | amāta sum | amātae sumus | <i>I have been loved</i> |
| | amāvistī | amāvistis | | amāta es | amātae estis | <i>was loved</i> |
| | amāvīt | amāvērunt | | amāta est | amātae sunt | |
| Plpf. | amāveram | amāverāmus | <i>I had loved</i> | amāta eram | amātae erāmus | <i>I had been loved</i> |
| | amāverās | amāverātis | | amāta erās | amātae erātis | |
| | amāverat | amāverant | | amāta erat | amātae erant | |
| Fut. Pf | amāverō | amāverimus | <i>I will have loved</i> | amāta erō | amātae erimus | <i>I will have been loved</i> |
| | amāveris | amāveritis | <i>loved</i> | amāta eris | amātae eritis | <i>loved</i> |
| | amāverit | amāverint | | amāta erit | amātae erunt | |

Subjunctive

| | | | | | | |
|-------|-----------|-------------|-----------------------|-------------|----------------|-----------------------|
| Pres. | amem | amēmus | same as indicative | amer | amēmur | same as indicative |
| | amēs | amētis | | amēris | amēminī | |
| | amet | ament | | ametur | amentur | |
| Impf. | amārem | amārēmus | | amārer | amārēmur | |
| | amārēs | amārētis | | amārēris | amārēminī | |
| | amāret | amārent | | amāretur | amārentur | |
| Perf. | amāverim | amāverīmus | | amāta sim | amātae sīmus | |
| | amāverīs | amāverītis | | amāta sīs | amātae sītis | |
| | amāverit | amāverint | | amāta sit | amātae sint | |
| Plpf. | amāvissē | amāvissēmus | | amāta essem | amātae essēmus | |
| | amāvissēs | amāvissētis | | amāta essēs | amātae essētis | |
| | amāvisset | amāvissent | | amāta esset | amātae essent | |

Imperative

amā amāte *love!*

Participle

| | | | | | |
|-------|-------------------------------|----------------------|--|------------------|--------------------------|
| Pres. | amāns (<i>gen. amantis</i>) | <i>loving</i> | | | |
| Perf. | | | | amātus, -a, -um | <i>having been loved</i> |
| Fut. | amātūrus, -a, -um | <i>going to love</i> | | amandus, -a, -um | <i>going to be loved</i> |

Infinitive

| | | | | |
|-------|---------------|----------------------------|-------------|---------------------------|
| Pres. | amāre | <i>to love</i> | amārī | <i>to be love</i> |
| Perf. | amāvisse | <i>to have loved</i> | amātum esse | <i>to have been loved</i> |
| Fut. | amātūrum esse | <i>to be going to love</i> | | |

teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum: to hold

| | active | | translation | passive | | translation |
|-------------------|----------|------------|-------------------------|------------|---------------|------------------------------|
| Indicative | | | | | | |
| Pres. | teneō | tenēmus | <i>I hold</i> | teneor | tenēmur | <i>I am (being) held</i> |
| | tenēs | tenētis | | tenēris | tenēminī | |
| | tenet | tenent | | tenētur | tenentur | |
| Impf. | tenēbam | tenēbāmus | <i>I was holding</i> | tenēbar | tenēbāmur | <i>I was (being) held</i> |
| | tenēbās | tenēbātis | | tenēbāris | tenēbāminī | |
| | tenēbat | tenēbant | | tenēbātur | tenēbantur | |
| Fut. | tenēbō | tenēbimus | <i>I will hold</i> | tenēbor | tenēbimur | <i>I will be held</i> |
| | tenēbis | tenēbitis | | tenēberis | tenēbiminī | |
| | tenēbit | tenēbunt | | tenēbitur | tenēbuntur | |
| Perf. | tenuī | tenuimus | <i>I have held</i> | tenta sum | tentae sumus | <i>I have been held</i> |
| | tenuistī | tenuistis | | tenta es | tentae estis | <i>was held</i> |
| | tenuit | tenuērunt | | tenta est | tentae sunt | |
| Plpf. | tenueram | tenuerāmus | <i>I had held</i> | tenta eram | tentae erāmus | <i>I had been held</i> |
| | tenuerās | tenuerātis | | tenta erās | tentae erātis | |
| | tenuerat | tenuerant | | tenta erat | tentae erant | |
| Fut. Pf. | tenuerō | tenuerimus | <i>I will have held</i> | tenta erō | tentae erimus | <i>I will have been held</i> |
| | tenueris | tenueritis | | tenta eris | tentae eritis | |
| | tenuerit | tenuerint | | tenta erit | tentae erunt | |

Subjunctive

| | | | | | | |
|-------|-----------|-------------|---------|-------------|----------------|--------------------|
| Pres. | teneam | teneāmus | same as | tenear | teneāmur | same as indicative |
| | teneās | teneātis | | teneāris | teneāminī | |
| | teneat | teneant | | teneatur | teneantur | |
| Impf. | tenērem | tenērēmus | | tenērer | tenērēmur | |
| | tenērēs | tenērētis | | tenērēris | tenērēminī | |
| | tenēret | tenērent | | tenērētur | tenērentur | |
| Perf. | tenuerim | tenuerīmus | | tenta sim | tentae sīmus | |
| | tenuerīs | tenuerītis | | tenta sīs | tentae sītis | |
| | tenuerit | tenuerint | | tenta sit | tentae sint | |
| Plpf. | tenuissem | tenuissēmus | | tenta essem | tentae essēmus | |
| | tenuissēs | tenuissētis | | tenta essēs | tentae essētis | |
| | tenuisset | tenuissent | | tenta esset | tentae essent | |

Imperative

tenē tenēte *hold!*

Participle

| | | | | | |
|-------|---------------------------------|----------------------|-------------------|--|-------------------------|
| Pres. | tenēns (<i>gen. tenentis</i>) | <i>holding</i> | | | |
| Perf. | | | tentus, -a, -um | | <i>having been held</i> |
| Fut. | tentūrus, -a, -um | <i>going to hold</i> | tenendus, -a, -um | | <i>going to be held</i> |

Infinitive

| | | | | |
|-------|---------------|----------------------------|-------------|--------------------------|
| Pres. | tenēre | <i>to hold</i> | tenērī | <i>to be held</i> |
| Perf. | tenuisse | <i>to have held</i> | tentum esse | <i>to have been held</i> |
| Fut. | tentūrum esse | <i>to be going to hold</i> | | |

dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum: to lead

| | active | | translation | passive | | translation |
|-------------------|-------------------------------|------------------------------------|------------------------|--|--|-----------------------------|
| Indicative | | | | | | |
| Pres. | dūcō dūcis dūcit | dūcimus dūcitis dūcunt | <i>I lead</i> | dūcor dūceris dūcitur | dūcimur dūciminī dūcuntur | <i>I am (being) led</i> |
| Impf. | dūcēbam dūcēbās dūcēbat | dūcēbāmus dūcēbātis dūcēbant | <i>I was leading</i> | dūcēbar dūcēbāris dūcēbātur | dūcēbāmur dūcēbāminī dūcēbantur | <i>I was (being) led</i> |
| Fut. | dūcam dūcēs dūcet | dūcēmus dūcētis dūcent | <i>I will lead</i> | dūcar dūcēris dūcētur | dūcēmur dūcēminī dūcentur | <i>I will be led</i> |
| Perf. | dūxī dūxistī dūxit | dūximus dūxistis dūxerunt | <i>I have led</i> | ducta sum ducta es ducta est | ductae sumus ductae estis ductae sunt | <i>I have been led</i> |
| Plpf. | dūxeram dūxerās dūxerat | dūxerāmus dūxerātis dūxerant | <i>I had led</i> | ducta eram ducta erās ducta erat | ductae erāmus ductae erātis ductae erant | <i>I had been led</i> |
| Fut.. Pf. | dūxerō dūxeris dūxerit | dūxerimus dūxeritis dūxerint | <i>I will have led</i> | ducta erō ducta eris ducta erit | ductae erimus ductae eritis ductae erunt | <i>I will have been led</i> |

Subjunctive

| | | | | | | |
|-------|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|-----------------------|---|---|--------------------|
| Pres. | dūcam dūcās dūcat | dūcāmus dūcātis dūcant | same as indicative | dūcar dūcāris dūcātur | dūcāmur dūcāminī dūcantur | same as indicative |
| Impf. | dūcerem dūcerēs dūceret | dūcerēmus dūcerētis dūcerent | | dūcerer dūcerēris dūcerētur | dūcerēmur dūcerēminī dūcerentur | |
| Perf. | dūxerim dūxerīs dūxerit | dūxerīmus dūxerītis dūxerint | | ducta sim ducta sīs ducta sit | ductae sīmus ductae sītis ductae sint | |
| Plpf. | dūxissem dūxissēs dūxisset | dūxissēmus dūxissētis dūxissent | | ducta essem ducta essēs ducta esset | ductae essēmus ductae essētis ductae essent | |

Imperative

dūc(e) dūcite *lead!*

Participle

| | | | | | |
|-------|---------------------------------|----------------------|--|-------------------|------------------------|
| Pres. | dūcēns (<i>gen. dūcentis</i>) | <i>leading</i> | | | |
| Perf. | | | | ductus, -a, -um | <i>having been led</i> |
| Fut. | ductūrus, -a, -um | <i>going to lead</i> | | dūcendus, -a, -um | <i>going to be led</i> |

Infinitive

| | | | | |
|-------|---------------|----------------------------|-------------|-------------------------|
| Pres. | dūcere | <i>to lead</i> | dūcī | <i>to be led</i> |
| Perf. | dūxisse | <i>to have led</i> | ductum esse | <i>to have been led</i> |
| Fut. | ductūrum esse | <i>to be going to lead</i> | | |

capiō, capere, cēpī, captum: to take, seize

| | active | | translation | passive | | translation |
|-------------------|----------|-----------|--------------------------|------------|---------------|----------------------------|
| Indicative | | | | | | |
| Pres. | capiō | capimus | <i>I take</i> | capior | capimur | <i>I am (being) taken</i> |
| | capis | capitis | | caperis | capiminī | |
| | capit | capiunt | | capitur | capiuntur | |
| Impf. | capiēbam | capēbāmus | <i>I was taking</i> | capiēbar | capēbāmur | <i>I was (being) taken</i> |
| | capiēbās | capēbātis | | capiēbāris | capēbāminī | |
| | capiēbat | capēbant | | capiēbātur | capēbantur | |
| Fut. | capiam | capiemus | <i>I will take</i> | capiar | capiemur | <i>I will be taken</i> |
| | capies | capietis | | capieris | capieminī | |
| | capiet | capient | | capientur | capientur | |
| Perf. | cēpī | cēpimus | <i>I have taken</i> | capta sum | captae sumus | <i>I have been taken</i> |
| | cēpistī | cēpistis | | capta es | captae estis | <i>was taken</i> |
| | cēpit | cēperunt | | capta est | captae sunt | |
| Plpf. | cēperam | cēperāmus | <i>I had taken</i> | capta eram | captae erāmus | <i>I had been taken</i> |
| | cēperās | cēperātis | | capta erās | captae erātis | |
| | cēperat | cēperant | | capta erat | captae erant | |
| Fut. Pf. | cēperō | cēperimus | <i>I will have taken</i> | capta erō | captae erimus | <i>I will have been</i> |
| | cēperis | cēperitis | | capta eris | captae eritis | <i>taken</i> |
| | cēperit | cēperint | | capta erit | captae erunt | |

Subjunctive

| | | | | | | |
|-------|----------|------------|---------|-------------|----------------|--------------------|
| Pres. | capiam | capāmus | same as | capiar | capiamur | same as indicative |
| | capias | capiatīs | | capiaris | capiaminī | |
| | capiat | capiant | | capiantur | capiantur | |
| Impf. | caperem | caperēmus | | caperer | caperēmur | |
| | caperēs | caperētis | | caperēris | caperēminī | |
| | caperet | caperent | | caperētur | caperentur | |
| Perf. | cēperim | cēperīmus | | capta sim | captae sīmus | |
| | cēperīs | cēperītis | | capta sīs | captae sītis | |
| | cēperit | cēperint | | capta sit | captae sint | |
| Plpf. | cēpisse | cēpissēmus | | capta essem | captae essēmus | |
| | cēpissēs | cēpissētis | | capta essēs | captae essētis | |
| | cēpisset | cēpissent | | capta esset | captae essent | |

Imperative

cape capite *take!*

Participle

| | | | | | |
|-------|-----------------------------------|----------------------|--|--------------------|--------------------------|
| Pres. | capiens (<i>gen. capientis</i>) | <i>taking</i> | | | |
| Perf. | | | | captus, -a, -um | <i>having been taken</i> |
| Fut. | captūrus, -a, -um | <i>going to take</i> | | capientus, -a, -um | <i>going to be taken</i> |

Infinitive

| | | | | |
|-------|---------------|----------------------------|-------------|---------------------------|
| Pres. | capere | <i>to take</i> | capī | <i>to be taken</i> |
| Perf. | cēpisse | <i>to have taken</i> | captum esse | <i>to have been taken</i> |
| Fut. | captūrum esse | <i>to be going to take</i> | | |

sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum: to know

| | active | | translation | passive | | translation |
|-------------------|----------|------------|--------------------------|------------|---------------|-------------------------------|
| Indicative | | | | | | |
| Pres. | sciō | scīmus | <i>I know</i> | scior | scīmur | <i>I am (being) known</i> |
| | scīs | scītis | | scīris | scīminī | |
| | scit | sciunt | | scītur | sciuntur | |
| Impf. | sciēbam | sciēbāmus | <i>I was knowing</i> | sciēbar | sciēbāmur | <i>I was (being) known</i> |
| | sciēbās | sciēbātis | | sciēbāris | sciēbāminī | |
| | sciēbat | sciēbant | | sciēbātur | sciēbantur | |
| Fut. | sciam | sciēmus | <i>I will know</i> | sciar | sciēmur | <i>I will be known</i> |
| | sciēs | sciētis | | sciēris | sciēminī | |
| | sciet | scient | | sciētur | scientur | |
| Perf. | scīvi | scīvimus | <i>I have known</i> | scīta sum | scītae sumus | <i>I have been known</i> |
| | scīvistī | scīvistis | | scīta es | scītae estis | |
| | scīvit | scīverunt | | scīta est | scītae sunt | |
| Plpf. | scīveram | scīverāmus | <i>I had known</i> | scīta eram | scītae erāmus | <i>I had been known</i> |
| | scīverās | scīverātis | | scīta erās | scītae erātis | |
| | scīverat | scīverant | | scīta erat | scītae erant | |
| Fut. Pf. | scīverō | scīverimus | <i>I will have known</i> | scīta erō | scītae erimus | <i>I will have been known</i> |
| | scīveris | scīveritis | | scīta eris | scītae eritis | |
| | scīverit | scīverint | | scīta erit | scītae erunt | |

Subjunctive

| | | | | | | |
|-------|-----------|-------------|-----------------------|-------------|----------------|--------------------|
| Pres. | sciam | sciāmus | same as indicative | sciar | sciāmur | same as indicative |
| | sciās | sciātis | | sciāris | sciāminī | |
| | sciat | sciant | | sciātur | sciantur | |
| Impf. | scīrem | scīrēmus | | scīrer | scīrēmur | |
| | scīrēs | scīrētis | | scīrēris | scīrēminī | |
| | scīret | scīrent | | scīrētur | scīrentur | |
| Perf. | scīverim | scīverīmus | | scīta sim | scītae sīmus | |
| | scīverīs | scīverītis | | scīta sīs | scītae sītis | |
| | scīverit | scīverint | | scīta sit | scītae sint | |
| Plpf. | scīvissem | scīvissēmus | | scīta essem | scītae essēmus | |
| | scīvissēs | scīvissētis | | scīta essēs | scītae essētis | |
| | scīvisset | scīvissent | | scīta esset | scītae essent | |

Imperative

scī scīte *know!*

Participle

| | | | | |
|-------|------------------------|----------------------|-------------------|--------------------------|
| Pres. | sciēns (gen. scientis) | <i>knowing</i> | | |
| Perf. | | | scītus, -a, -um | <i>having been known</i> |
| Fut. | scītūrus, -a, -um | <i>going to know</i> | sciendus, -a, -um | <i>going to be known</i> |

Infinitive

| | | | | |
|-------|---------------|----------------------------|-------------|---------------------------|
| Pres. | scīre | <i>to know</i> | scīrī | <i>to be known</i> |
| Perf. | scīvisse | <i>to have known</i> | scītum esse | <i>to have been known</i> |
| Fut. | scītūrum esse | <i>to be going to know</i> | | |

| Sum, esse, fuī, futūrum: to be | | | possum, posse, potuī, -- : to be able, can | | | |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------|------------------------------------|---|-------------------------------------|--|--|
| | | translation | | | translation | |
| Indicative | | | | | | |
| Pres. | sum es est | sumus estis sunt | <i>I am</i> | possum potes potest | possumus potestis possunt | <i>I am able, can</i> |
| Impf. | eram erās erat | erāmus erātis erant | <i>I was</i> | poteram poterās poterat | poterāmus poterātis poterant | <i>I was able, could</i> |
| Fut. | erō eris erit | erimus eritis erunt | <i>I will be</i> | poterō poteris poterit | poterimus poteritis poterunt | <i>I will be able</i> |
| Perf. | fuī fuistī fuit | fuimus fuistis fuerunt | <i>I have been, I was</i> | potuī potuistī potuit | potuimus potuistis potuerunt | <i>I have been able, I was able, could</i> |
| Plpf. | fueram fuerās fuerat | fuerāmus fuerātis fuerant | <i>I had been</i> | potueram potuerās potuerat | potuerāmus potuerātis potuerant | <i>I had been able</i> |
| Fut. Pf. | fuerō fueris fuerit | fuerimus fueritis fuerint | <i>I will have been</i> | potuerō potueris potuerit | potuerimus potueritis potuerint | <i>I will have been able</i> |
| Subjunctive | | | | | | |
| Pres. | sim sīs sit | sīmus sītis sint | same as indicative | possim possīs possit | possīmus possītis possint | same as indicative |
| Impf. | essem essēs esset | essēmus essētis essent | | possem possēs posset | possēmus possētis possent | |
| Perf. | fuerim fuerīs fuerit | fuerīmus fuerītis fuerint | | potuerim potuerīs potuerit | potuerīmus potuerītis potuerint | |
| Plpf. | fuissem fuissēs fuisset | fuissēmus fuissētis fuissent | | potuissem potuissēs potuisset | potuissēmus potuissētis potuissent | |
| Imperative | | | | | | |
| | xxx | | | xxx | | |
| Infinitive | | | | | | |
| Pres. | esse | | <i>to be</i> | posse | <i>to be able</i> | |
| Perf. | fuisse | | <i>to have been</i> | potuisse | <i>to have been heard</i> | |
| Fut. | futūrum esse* | | <i>to be going to be</i> | --- | | |

* alternative = fore

sum, esse, fuī, futūrum: to be, 165

adsum, -esse, -fuī: be present, assist, 3

dēsum, -esse, -fuī: be lacking, lack, fail, 6

intersum, -esse, -fuī: take part in, engage in, 1

possum, posse, potuī: be able, can, avail, 40

praesum, -esse, -fuī: be over, preside over, 2

subsum, -esse, -fuī: be near, close at hand, 1

eō, īre, i(v)ī, itūrum: to go

| | active | | translation |
|-------------------|-------------------------|------------------------------|--------------------------|
| Indicative | | | |
| Pres. | eō īs it | īmus ītis eunt | <i>I go</i> |
| Impf. | ībam ībās ībat | ībāmus ībātis ībant | <i>I was going</i> |
| Fut. | ībō ībīs ībīt | ībimus ībītis ībunt | <i>I will go</i> |
| Perf. | īī īstī īit | īimus īstis īerunt | <i>I went, have gone</i> |
| Plpf. | ieram ierās ierat | ierāmus ierātis ierant | <i>I had gone</i> |
| Fut. Pf. | ierō ierīs ierit | ierimus ierītis ierint | <i>I will have gone</i> |

Subjunctive

| | | | |
|-------|-------------------------|------------------------------|--------------------|
| Pres. | eam eās eat | eāmus eātis eant | same as indicative |
| Impf. | īrem īrēs īret | īrēmus īrētis īrent | |
| Perf. | ierim ierīs ierit | ierimus ierītis ierunt | |
| Plpf. | īsem īssēs īsset | īssēmus īssētis īssent | |

Imperative

ī īte

Participle

| | | |
|-------|-----------------|--------------------|
| Pres. | īēns (euntis) | <i>going</i> |
| Perf. | --- | |
| Fut. | itūrus, -a, -um | <i>going to go</i> |

Infinitive

| | | |
|-------|-------------|--------------------------|
| Pres. | īre | <i>to go</i> |
| Perf. | īsse | <i>to have gone</i> |
| Fut. | itūrum esse | <i>to be going to go</i> |

Compound verbs

adeō, -īre, i(v)ī, itus: approach, encounter, 2
eō, īre, ivī, itum: to go, come, 4
exeō, -īre, -īī (ivī), -itus: go out, 4
ineō, -īre, īī, -itum: go into, enter, 1
intereō, -īre, -ivī, -itum: to die, perish, 3
introeō, -īre, īī, -itum: go into, enter, 1
obeō, -īre, -ivī, -itum: go to meet, oppose 1
prōdeō, -īre, -īī, -itum: advance, go forth, 1
redeō, -īre, -ivī: go back, return, 1
subeō, -īre, -īī, -itum: go up to, approach, 1
trānseō, -īre, -īī (ivī), itus: go across, pass, 6

volō, velle, voluī: to wish, want

| | active | | translation | |
|--------------------|---|--|---------------------------|--|
| Indicative | | | | |
| Pres. | <u>volō</u> <u>vīs</u> <u>vult</u> | <u>volumus</u> <u>vultis</u> ¹ <u>volunt</u> ² | <i>I wish</i> | ← irregular present tense ¹ pg. 14, 46 ² pg. 28 |
| Impf. | volēbam volēbās volēbat | volēbāmus volēbātis volēbant | <i>I was wishing</i> | |
| Fut. | volam volēs volet | volēmus volētis volent | <i>I will wish</i> | |
| Perf. | voluī voluistī voluit | voluimus voluistis voluērunt | <i>I have wished</i> | |
| Plpf. | volueram voluērās voluerat | voluerāmus voluerātis voluerant | <i>I had wished</i> | |
| Fut. Pf. | voluerō volueris voluerit | voluerimus volueritis voluerint | <i>I will have wished</i> | |
| Subjunctive | | | | |
| Pres. | <u>velim</u> <u>velis</u> <u>velit</u> ³ | <u>velimus</u> <u>velitis</u> <u>velint</u> ⁴ | same as indicative | ← irregular present tense (not volam) ³ pg. 52 ⁴ pg. 28, 42, 58, 60 |
| Impf. | <u>vellem</u> <u>vellēs</u> <u>vellet</u> | <u>vellēmus</u> <u>vellētis</u> <u>vellent</u> ⁵ | | ← irregular imperfect tense (irreg. velle) ⁵ pg. 10, 40, 52, 58, 62 |
| Perf. | voluerim voluerīs voluerit | voluerīmus voluerītis voluerint | | |
| Plpf. | voluissem voluissēs voluisset | voluissēmus voluissētis voluissent | | |
| Imperative | | | | |
| | xxxx | xxxx | <i>wish!</i> | |
| Participle | | | | |
| Pres. | volēns (gen. volentis) | | <i>wishing</i> | |
| Perf. | xxxx | | | |
| Fut. | xxxx | | | |
| Infinitive | | | | |
| Pres. | <u>velle</u> | | <i>to wish</i> | ← irregular infinitive |
| Perf. | voluisse | | <i>to have wished</i> | |
| Fut. | xxxx | | | |

sequō, sequī, secūtus-a-um sum: to follow

| | deponent | | translation |
|--------------------|--|--|---|
| Indicative | | | |
| Pres. | sequor sequeris sequitur | sequimur sequiminī sequuntur | <i>I follow</i> |
| Impf. | sequēbar sequēbāris sequēbātur | sequēbāmur sequēbāminī sequēbantur | <i>I was following</i> |
| Fut. | sequar sequēris sequētur | sequēmur sequēminī sequentur | <i>I will follow</i> |
| Perf. | secūta sum secūta es secūta est | secūtae sumus secūtae estis secūtae sunt | <i>I have followed</i> |
| Plpf. | secūta eram secūta erās secūta erat | secūtae erāmus secūtae erātis secūtae erant | <i>I had followed</i> |
| Fut.. Pf. | secūta erō secūta eris secūta erit | secūtae erimus secūtae eritis secūtae erunt | <i>I will have followed</i> |
| Subjunctive | | | |
| Pres. | sequar sequāris sequātur | sequāmur sequāminī sequantur | same as indicative |
| Impf. | sequerer sequerēris sequerētur | sequerēmur sequerēminī sequerentur | |
| Perf. | secūta sim secūta sīs secūta sit | secūtae sīmus secūtae sītis secūtae sint | |
| Plpf. | secūta essem secūta essēs secūta esset | secūtae essēmus secūtae essētis secūtae essent | |
| Imperative | | | |
| | sequere | sequitor | <i>follow!</i> |
| Participle | | | |
| Pres. | sequēns (gen. sequentis) | | <i>following</i> |
| Perf. | secūtus, -a, -um | | <i>having followed</i> |
| Fut. | secūtūrus, -a, -um | | <i>going to follow</i> sequendus,-a -um <i>going to be followed</i> |
| Infinitive | | | |
| Pres. | sequī | | <i>to follow</i> |
| Perf. | secūtum esse | | <i>to have followed</i> |
| Fut. | secūtūrum esse | | <i>to be going to follow</i> |

1. Relative Clause of Purpose

There are two different types of purpose (final) clauses: adverbial and relative. Adverbial purpose clauses are introduced by *ut/nē* and are regularly translated with the modal verbs *may* and *might*. Relative clauses of purpose behave in the same way as adverbial purpose clauses—employing present subjunctive in primary sequence and imperfect subjunctive in secondary sequence—but they are introduced by a relative pronoun.

There are only two examples of relative clauses of purpose in this commentary. When you translate these clauses, use the modal verbs *may/might* or *would/should* depending on the context:

legātōs...mittunt quī dicerent... *they sent envoys who would/should say...* p. 11
= *so that they might say...*

nāvēs...quibus reportārī possent *ships by which they might be able to be carried back* p. 19
= *so that they might be able to be carried back*

2. Relative Clause of Characteristic (Generic Relative Clause)

The function of a relative clause of characteristic is to clarify *what sort of person* or *what sort of thing* the antecedent is. This clause governs a subjunctive verb and very often modifies a general or indefinite antecedent (e.g. he is a man who flees from danger). The indicative mood, by contrast, suggests that the antecedent is a particular someone doing something (e.g. he is the man who fled from danger).

e.g. Is est quī ā periculō fugat. *He is (the sort of) one who flees from danger.*
or *He is (the sort of) one who **would** flee from danger.*

This type of relative clause can be causal, concessive, or consecutive (result) in sense depending on the context. While you should translate pf. and plpf. subjunctives as you would an indicative, you may translate pres. and impf. subjunctives two different ways: (a) as an indicative or (b) as a potential subjunctive with the modal verb *would* (see above). Caesar frequently uses this clause when the antecedent is (a) missing, as in the example above, (b) a generic noun, or (c) an indefinite pronoun (e.g. *is, ea, id*).

ea quae...pertinērent *those (sort of) things which pertained/would pertain to setting out* p. 4

regnum...quod pater ante habuerit *(the sort of) kingdom which his father held before* p. 6

id quod fēcerit *that (sort of thing) which he did* p. 40

neque is sum quī...terrear *I am not (such a) one who am terrified/would be terrified* p. 46

3. Relative Clause in Indirect Discourse

In indirect discourse, the verbs of subordinate clauses—including including relative clauses—become subjunctive. Caesar frequently uses quod-clauses and conditional clauses (*sī*-clauses) in this way, but his use of relative clauses in indirect discourse is surprisingly rare:

quod imperium obtentūrus esset *because he was about to obtain the command* p. 6

quod...pendere cōnsuēsset *which he had been accustomed to pay* p. 40

quōrum alter mīlia...absit *one of whom is about fifty miles away* p. 42

In most instances, these subjunctives do not require a special translation and therefore should be translated in the tense in which you find them. If the relative clause was originally a relative clause of purpose or a relative clause of characteristic, however, you should translate it accordingly.

Conditional sentences in indirect discourse undergo a number of changes that make them more difficult to identify and translate than their counterparts in direct discourse.

I. Identifying conditions in direct discourse:

If-then clauses are called **conditions** or **conditional sentences**. All conditions have two parts: (a) the **protasis** (premise, if-clause, or conditional) and (b) the **apodosis** (result, then-clause, or consequent). In order to identify one of the six main types of conditions below, you must identify the tense and mood of the verbs in both the *protasis* and *apodosis*. If the tense and moods of the verbs do not fit one of the six types, we call such a sentence a **mixed condition**.

| name | protasis | apodosis | example in translation |
|-----------------------|---------------|-------------|--|
| simple present | pres. | pres. | If you believe, you are mistaken. |
| simple past | past | past | If you believed, you were mistaken. |
| future more vivid | fut./fut. pf. | fut. | If you believe, you will be mistaken. |
| future less vivid | pres. subj. | pres. subj. | If you should believe, you would be mistaken. |
| present contrafactual | impf. subj. | impf. subj. | If you were believing, you would be mistaken. |
| past contrafactual | plpf. subj. | plpf. subj. | If you had believed, you would have been mistaken. |

II. Identifying conditions in indirect discourse

In indirect discourse, every apodosis becomes an infinitive and every protasis—whether originally indicative or subjunctive—becomes subjunctive. In secondary sequence, the infinitive remains the same, but the protasis undergoes more changes (often becoming impf. subj.), which makes the condition difficult to identify. Below is a summary of those changes.

| Indicative Conditions | | |
|---|---|--|
| | <u>direct discourse</u> | <u>indirect discourse</u> |
| Simple Present: <i>If you believe, you are wrong.</i> | | |
| primary | dīcō “sī credis, errās.” | dīcō sī haec credās, tē errāre |
| secondary | dixī “sī credis, errās.” | dixī sī haec crederēs, tē errāre |
| Simple Past: <i>If you believed, you were wrong.</i> | | |
| primary | dīcō “sī credēbās/credidistī, errāvistī.” | dīcō sī haec crederēs/credideris, tē errāvissē. |
| secondary | dixī “sī credēbās/credidistī, errāvistī.” | dixī sī haec crederēs/credidissēs, tē errāvissē. |
| Future More Vivid: <i>If you believe, you will be wrong.</i> | | |
| primary | dīcō “sī credēs, errābis.” | dīcō sī haec credās, tē errātūrum esse |
| secondary | dixī “sī credēs, errābis.” | dixī sī haec crederēs, tē errātūrum esse |

| Subjunctive Conditions | | |
|---|----------------------------------|--|
| | <u>direct discourse</u> | <u>indirect discourse</u> |
| Future Less Vivid: <i>If you should believe, you would be wrong.</i> | | |
| primary | dīcō “sī credās, errēs.” | dīcō sī haec credās, tē errātūrum esse |
| secondary | dixī “sī credās, errēs.” | dixī sī haec crederēs, tē errātūrum esse |
| Present Contrafactual: <i>If you were believing, you would be wrong.</i> | | |
| primary | dīcō “sī crederēs, errārēs.” | dīcō sī haec crederēs, tē errātūrum esse |
| secondary | dixī “sī crederēs, errārēs.” | dixī sī haec crederēs, tē errātūrum esse |
| Past Contrafactual: <i>If you had believed, you would have been wrong.</i> | | |
| primary | dīcō “sī credissēs, errāvissēs.” | dīcō sī haec credissēs, tē errātūrum fuisse. |
| secondary | dixī “sī credissēs, errāvissēs.” | dixī sī haec credissēs, tē errātūrum fuisse. |

Caesar Alphabetized Core Vocabulary (5 or more times)

The following seven pages includes all words in the Caesar selections that occur five or more times arranged in an alphabetized vocabulary list. The author tabulated the frequency lists by collating all of Caesars' words in the selections and counting them. Digital flashcards are available online.

- ā, ab:** (away) from, by, 80
absum, -esse, āfuī: be absent, lack, 6
ac: and, and also, and even, 24
accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus: approach, 5
accidō, -ere, accidī: to happen, fall to, 13
accipiō: to take without effort, receive, get, accept, 10
ad: to, toward; near, at 110
Aduātucī, -ōrum m.: Aduatuci (in Belgae), 5
adventus, -ūs m.: arrival, approach, 7
ager, agrī m.: field, land; farm, 8
aliquī, -qua, -quod: some, any, definite, 8
alius, -a, -ud: other, another, else, 13
alter, -era, -erum: other (of two), 12
altus, -a, -um: high, lofty, tall, 5
Ambiorix, -rigis m.: Ambiorix, 15
amīcitia, -ae, f.: friendship, 12
animadvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum: turn mind to, notice 5
animus, -ī m.: mind, spirit; pl. courage, 6
annus, -ī m.: year, 11
appellō (1): call, call by name, 5
apud: among, at the house of (acc.), 7
arbitror, arbitrārī, arbitrātus sum: to judge, think, 10
arma, -ōrum n.: arms, equipment, tools, 7
ascendō, -ere, -ī, -ēnsus: ascend, mount 2
at: but; mind you; but, you say, 7
atque: and, and also, and even, 60
aut: or (aut...aut – either...or), 32
autem: however, moreover, 5
barbarus, -a, -um: foreign, savage, 5
Belgae, -ārum m.: Belgians, 6
bellum, -ī, n.: war, 16
Britannia, -ae f.: Britain, 6
Caesar, -aris m.: Caesar, 40
calamitās, -tātis f.: loss, misfortune, calamity, disaster, 5
capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum: to take, capture, seize, 11
castra, -ōrum n.: camp, encampment, 23
casus, -ūs m.: misfortune, mishap; fall 5
causa, -ae f.: reason, cause; case, 21
celeritās, -tātis f.: quickness, swiftness, speed, 5
celeriter: quickly, swiftly, speedily, 6
certus, -a, -um: definite, sure, certain, reliable, 8
Cicero, Cicerōnis m.: Cicero 14

- circiter:** (round) about, not far from, 7
circumveniō, -īre: to come around, encircle, 6
cīvitās cīvitātis, f.: state, citizenship, 20
coepī, coepisse, coeptum: to begin, 9
cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum: to learn, come to know, pf. know, 14
cōgō, cōgere, cōēgī, cōactum: to collect; compel, 11
cohors, cohortis f.: cohort, company, troop 14
commūnis, -e: common, 6
compleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum: fill up, fill, 6
complūres n.: several, 5
concilium, -iī n.: meeting, rendezvous, 6
confirmō (1): make strong, confirm strengthen, 5
co(n)jiciō, -ere, -iēcī: throw together, throw, take oneself, 10
cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum: to try, 6
cōnsilium, -iī n.: plan, counsel, 12
conspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus: see, behold, 5
constituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus: decide, establish, resolve, 14
cōnsuescō, -ere, cōnsuē(v)ī, -suētum: to be accustomed, 8
consuētūdo, -inis f.: custom, habit, 5
contineō, -ēre, -nuī, -tentum: hold or keep together, 6
contrōversia, -ae f.: dispute, debate, 7
conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus: come together, assemble, 9
copia, -ae f.: abundance, supply; troops, 12
Cotta, -ae m.: Cotta, 10
Crassus, -ī m.: Crassus, 5
cum: with (+ abl.); when, since, although, 86
dē: (down) from; about, concerning, 41
dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum: report, offer 8
dēmonstrō (1): to show, demonstrate, 5
dēsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrum: be lacking, lack, fail, 6
dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus: say, speak, tell, call, name, 18
diēs, -ēī m./f.: day, time, season, 33
discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum: to go away, depart, 9
disciplīna, -ae f.: training, instruction, 5
dō, dare, dedī, datum: give; grant, 18
Druidēs, -um m.: Druids, 6
dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus: lead, draw; consider, 7
dum: while, as long as, until, 6
duo, duae, duo: two, 8
ē, ex: out from, from, out of (+ abl.), 72
Eburōnēs, -um m.: Eburones (German), 5
efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus: make, form, 5
ēgredior, -ī, -gressus: go out, disembark, 5
eques, equitīs m.: horseman, rider, 12
equitātus, -ūs m.: cavalry, 5
et: and, also, even, 167
etiam: also, even, besides, 8

etsī: even if, although, though, 5
exercitus, -ūs m.: (trained) army, 9
existimō (1): judge, consider, think, 9
facilis, -e: easy; adv. facile, easily, 10
faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum: do, make, perform; grant, 40
facultās, -tātis f.: opportunity, power, skill, ability, 5
ferē: almost, nearly, closely, 7
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus: carry, bear, endure, 7
filius, -iī m.: son, 5
fīnis, -is m./f.: end, border; territory, 17
fīnitimus, -a, -um: neighboring; subst. neighbors, 6
flūmen, -inis n.: river, stream, 9
fortis, -e: strong, brave, valiant, 7
frūmentum, -ī n.: grain, 10
Gallia, -ae f.: Gaul, 17
Gallus, -a, -um: Gallic; subst. a Gaul, 15
genus, generis, n.: origin, kind, sort, 10
Germānus, -a, -um: German, 9
gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus: carry (on), wage, 8
gravis, -e: heavy, serious, severe; venerable, 9
habeō, -ēre, habuī, -itus: have, hold; consider, 32
Helvētius, -a, -um: Helvetian; subst. a Helvetian 16
hiberna, -ōrum n.: winter-quarters, 26
hic, haec, hoc: this, these, 92
homō, -inis m./f.: man, mortal, human, 15
hostis, -is m./f.: stranger, enemy, foe, 43
ibi: there, in that place, 5
īdem, eadem, idem: the same, 14
ille, illa, illud: that, those, 22
impedīmentum, -ī n.: baggage, impediment, 6
imperium, -ī n.: command, power, 7
imperō (1): command, order, bid, 7
impetus, -ūs m.: attack, assault, onset, 7
in: in, on (abl.), into, to (acc.) 173
incitō (1): put into motion, urge on, 5
inferō, -ferre, -tulī, illātum: wage, carry on, 7
initium, -ī n.: beginning, entrance, 6
inter: between, among (+ acc.), 15
interim: meanwhile, in the meantime, 5
interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum: kill, slay, destroy, 14
intermittō, -ere: interrupt, discontinue, leave off, 5
ipse, ipsa, ipsum: -self; the very, 17
is, ea, id: this, that; he, she, it, 133
ita: so, thus, 7
itaque: and so, 6
iter, itineris n.: way, road, route, journey, 17
iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussum: to order, command, 17

- Labiēnus, ī m.:** Labienus, 5
lēgātus, -ī m.: an envoy, legate, 16
legio, -ōnis f.: legion, (~4200 soldiers), 32
licet: impersonal, it is allowed or permitted, 5
littera, -ae f.: letter of the alphabet, letter, literature, 12
locus, -ī m.: place, region, location, 31
longē: far, at a distant, 6
longus -a, -um: long, 8
Lucius, -ī m.: Lucius, 10
magnitūdo, -inis f.: greatness, size, 5
magnus, -a, -um: great, large; mighty, important, 29
maior, maius: greater, 6
manus, manūs, f.: hand; group, 9
maximē: exceedingly, especially, 6
maximus, -a, -um: greatest, largest, 15
mīles, mīlitis, m.: soldier, 33
mille pl. mīlia, ium n.: thousand, 9
minor, minus: less, smaller, 7
mittō, -ere, mīsī, missus: send, hurl, dismiss, 20
mors, mortis, f.: death, 9
multitūdo, inis f.: multitude, population, people, 11
multus, -a, -um: much, many, 11
mūnitio, -iōnis f.: fortification, paving, 7
nam: for, 9
nāvis, nāvis, f.: ship, boat, 23
nē: lest, that not, no, not, 13
neque: and not, nor (neque...neque = neither...nor), 27
Nerviī, -iōrum m.: Nervii (Belgic Gauls) 9
nihil: nothing, 10
nisi: if not, unless 6
nōn: not, by no means, not at all, 36
noster, nostra, nostrum: our, 36
nox, noctis, f.: night, 9
nūllus, -a, -um: none, no, no one, 9
numerus, -ī m.: number, multitude, 13
nuntius, -iī m.: messenger, 6
ob: on account of, because of (acc.), 5
obsēs, obsidis m./f.: hostage, 5
obtineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum: hold, maintain, 6
omnis, omne: every, all, 72
oppugnātio, -tiōnis f.: an assault, 6
oppugnō (1): capture by assault, attack, 6
ōrātio, -ionis f.: speaking, speech, language, 8
ordō, -inis m.: order, line, array; status, 6
Orgetorix, -is m.: Orgetorix, 6
pars, partis, f.: part, side, direction, 43

passus, -ūs: pace, step, 7
paulus, -a, -um: little, small, 9
pāx, pācis f.: peace, quiet, rest, 6
per: through, across (acc) 18
perīculum, -ī n.: risk, danger, peril, 14
permoveō, -ēre: to move deeply, trouble, excite, agitate, 5
persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsūm: persuade, convince, 12
pertineō, -ēre, -tinuī: to pertain to, reach, stretch to, 7
perturbō (1): confuse, disturb, throw into confusion, 6
pervenīō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum: arrive, 8
pēs, pedis m.: foot, 5
petō, petere, petīvī, petītum: seek, aim at, 7
plērumque: for the most part, mostly, commonly, 5
ponō, ponere, posuī, positum: to put, place, 6
populus, -ī m.: people, nation, 9
possum, posse, potuī: be able, can, avail, 40
post: after, behind (+ acc.); afterward, next, 5
praemium, -ī n.: reward, prize, 5
praestō, -āre, -stitī, -stitus: perform, show, be better, 6
premō, -ere, pressī, pressus: check, pursue, control, 7
p̄rimus -a -um: first, 15
p̄rivō (1): deprive of, rob, strip from (abl), 5
prō: before, for, in behalf of (abl.), 16
probō (1): approve, commend, 5
proelium, -ī n.: battle, combat, 15
profectio, -ōnis f.: departure, 5
proficīscor, -ī, -fectus: set out, depart, 23
prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus: keep off, prohibit, 6
propter: on account of, because of, 5
prōvincia, -ae f.: province, 7
proximus, -a, -um: nearest, very close, 12
p̄blicus, -a, -um: public, common, 11
pugna, -ae f.: battle, fight, 7
pugnō (1): to fight, 9
Pullo, Pullōnis, m.: Pullo, 6
quantus, -a, -um: how great, much, many, 6
-que: and, 109
quī, quae, quod (quis? quid?): who, which, that, 226
quidem: indeed, in fact, certainly, 6
Quintus, -ī m.: Quintus, 6
quisque, quidque: each one, each person, 9
ratio, ratiōnis, f.: calculation, account, method, 5
recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum: take back, recover, 10
regnum, -ī n.: royal power, kingdom, realm, 8
relinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictum: to leave behind, 7
reliquus, -a, um: remaining, the rest of, 28

rēs, reī, f.: thing, matter, affair, business, 64
resistō, -ere, -stitī: stand still, halt; oppose, 5
Rhēnus, -ī m.: Rhine River, 9
Rhodanus, -a, -um: Rhone, 5
Rōmānus, -a, -um: of Rome, Roman, 15
Sabīnus, ī m.: Sabinus, 7
salūs, -ūtis f.: safety, refuge; health, 10
sē: himself, herself, itself, themselves, 74
sed: but, moreover, however, 13
Sēquanus, -a, -um: Sequanian, 5
sēsē: emphatic form of reflexive sē, 14
sī: if (only), whether, in case that, 30
signum -ī, n.: sign, signal; gesture, seal, 5
sine: without (abl.), 8
singulus, -a, -um: one by one, separate, 5
spērō (1): hope (for), expect, 6
spēs, -ēī f.: hope, expectation, 6
sub: under, below, beneath, underneath, 5
subitō: suddenly, 5
subsequor, -ī, secūtus sum: to follow after or behind, 7
subsidiū, iī n.: reserve troops; third line of battle, 5
sum, esse, fuī, futūrum: to be, 165
summus, -a, -um: top of, highest (part of) 10
superō (1): surpass, overcome, 6
superus, -a, -um: upper, higher, above, 9
sustineō, -ēre, -uī: hold up, sustain, 8
suus, -a, -um: his, her, its, their own, 54
tamen: however, nevertheless, 14
tantus, -a, -um: so great, so large, 10
telum, -ī n.: projective, weapon, blow, 9
tempus, temporis, n.: time, occasion, 11
teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum: to hold, keep, 6
tertius, -a, -um: third, 8
Titurius, -ī m.: Titurius, 8
tōtus -a, -um: whole, entire, 7
trānseō, -īre, -īī (īvī), itus: pass (by), 6
trēs, tria: three, 7
tum: then, at that time, 12
turris, turris f.: tower, walled tower, 7
tūtus, -a, -um: safe, secure, guarded, 7
ūllus, -a, -um: any, 5
undique: (from) everywhere, from or on all sides, 5
ūnus, -a, -um: one, 29
ūsus, -ūs m.: use, practice, application, 10
ut: as, just as, when (+ ind.); (so) that, in order that, 59
uterque, utraque, utrumque: each (of two) 8
ūtor, -ī, ūsus sum: use, employ (abl.), 5

vallum, -ī n.: wall, fortification, palisade, 11
veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus: come, go, 14
victoria, -ae f.: victory, 7
videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum: to see, 14
virtūs, -ūtis f.: valor, manhood, excellence, 11
vīta, -ae, f.: life, 5
volō, velle, voluī: will, wish, be willing, 13
Vorēnus, -ī m.: Vorenius, 5

